



## Manual

Suite

Version 14

## Legal information

All rights reserved. This document and the applications described therein are copyrighted products of Net at Work GmbH, Paderborn, Federal Republic of Germany. This document is subject to change without notice. The information contained in this document does not constitute an assumption of warranty or liability on the part of Net at Work GmbH. The partial or complete reproduction is only permitted with the written permission of Net at Work GmbH.

Copyright © 2023 Net at Work GmbH

Net at Work GmbH  
Am Hoppenhof 32a  
D-33104 Paderborn  
Germany

Microsoft®, Windows®, Microsoft Exchange®, SQL Server®, SQL Server Express®, Windows Server 2008®, Windows Server 2012®, Windows Server 2012 R2®, Windows Server 2016®, Microsoft .NET Framework®, Microsoft Report Viewer®, Microsoft Office®, Microsoft 365®, Office 365®, Microsoft Outlook®, Microsoft Visual Studio® and Azure® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. NoSpamProxy® and 32Guards® are registered trademarks of Net at Work GmbH. All other trademarks used belong to the respective manufacturers or owners.

**THIS DOCUMENT WAS LAST EDITED ON NOVEMBER 27, 2023.**

# Content

<b>The user interface</b>	<b>1</b>
Actions on the overview page	1
Further settings	3
<b>Monitoring</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Message tracking</b>	<b>8</b>
Enabling message tracking	8
Filtering search results	9
View details on processing an email	10
Exporting or importing records	11
Report misclassification	11
Notes	12
<b>Message tracking (Web App)</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>Monitoring</b>	<b>15</b>
Filtering emails	16
Viewing email details	17
<b>Email queues</b>	<b>24</b>
Searching for specific queues	24
Start or pause delivery over selected domains	25
Creating a disabled queue	25
<b>Emails on hold</b>	<b>27</b>
Searching for specific emails on hold	27
In which cases are emails put on hold?	28
Related steps	29

Locked attachments .....	29
Status types .....	30
<b>Large Files .....</b>	<b>35</b>
Related steps .....	35
Filter options during the search .....	36
<b>Reports .....</b>	<b>37</b>
Reports .....	37
De-Mail .....	39
<b>Event log .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Filtering entries .....	41
<b>Identities .....</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Corporate domains .....</b>	<b>45</b>
Managing corporate domains .....	46
Editing cryptographic keys .....	47
Setting up administrative addresses .....	49
<b>Corporate users .....</b>	<b>53</b>
Adding corporate users .....	55
Automating the user import .....	56
Setting up address rewriting .....	65
Requesting cryptographic keys .....	66
Using cryptographic keys .....	68
Configuring default settings for users .....	69
Adding additional user fields .....	69
<b>Partners .....</b>	<b>72</b>
Default partner settings .....	73

Adding partner domains .....	76
Editing partner domains .....	77
Adding user entries to partner domains .....	81
<b>Certificates and PGP keys .....</b>	<b>84</b>
Configuring certificate providers .....	86
Managing certificates .....	104
Checking certificates for validity .....	109
Certificates in quarantine .....	111
Managing PGP keys .....	111
Public key servers .....	116
Pending requests .....	123
<b>Email authentication .....</b>	<b>125</b>
DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) .....	125
Trusted ARC signers .....	135
<b>Configuration .....</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>Setting up email routing .....</b>	<b>142</b>
Adding corporate email servers .....	142
Creating inbound connectors .....	148
Creating outbound send connectors .....	149
Creating receive connectors .....	158
Shared settings for connectors .....	165
Invalid requests for SMTP receive connectors .....	178
Queued delivery .....	180
Setting up header-based routing .....	182
<b>Creating rules .....</b>	<b>183</b>

General Information .....	183
Steps in creating rules .....	185
Related topics .....	193
<b>Creating a content filter .....</b>	<b>196</b>
Creating content filters .....	196
Creating content filter actions .....	201
Defining conditions .....	205
Example configurations of the content filter .....	206
How to block potentially harmful file attachments .....	211
Notes on Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR) .....	214
Setting up URL Safeguard .....	215
<b>NoSpamProxy components .....</b>	<b>217</b>
Intranet Role .....	218
Gateway Role .....	219
Web Portal .....	229
Databases .....	238
How to change the WebPort for NoSpamProxy .....	258
<b>Connected systems .....</b>	<b>260</b>
DNS Servers .....	261
SMS providers .....	262
Archive connectors .....	264
De-Mail providers .....	267
digiSeal server connection .....	269
CSA Certified IP List .....	270
<b>User notifications .....</b>	<b>272</b>

Inspection report .....	272
Email notifications .....	275
How to customise NoSpamProxy notifications .....	275
Using different designs for sender domains .....	281
<b>Presettings .....</b>	<b>290</b>
Branding .....	291
Word matching .....	292
Realtime block lists .....	294
<b>Advanced settings .....</b>	<b>296</b>
Sensitive data protection .....	297
Monitoring .....	298
Subject flags .....	301
Level of trust configuration .....	308
SMTP protocol settings .....	314
SSL/TLS configuration .....	320
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>323</b>
Log settings .....	326
Blocked IP addresses .....	328
Fixing permissions .....	329
Web Portal Security .....	330
<b>Disclaimer .....</b>	<b>331</b>
Preparing placeholders for use in disclaimer templates .....	332
Setting up templates and rules .....	335
Creating templates .....	335
Adding a template .....	335

Options in the toolbar (HTML view) .....	336
Adding default templates .....	338
Adding a rule .....	338
Changing the order of the rules .....	340
<b>Applying disclaimers .....</b>	<b>341</b>
<b>Changing the SSL Certificate .....</b>	<b>342</b>
<b>Annex .....</b>	<b>343</b>
<b>Filters in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>344</b>
<b>Filters available in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>347</b>
<b>Actions in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>371</b>
<b>Actions available in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>372</b>
<b>Basic concepts .....</b>	<b>416</b>
Sender reputation .....	416
32Guards .....	417
Flow Guard .....	420
Content filters .....	421
Level of Trust .....	423
Rules .....	427
Spam Confidence Level (SCL) .....	429
URL Safeguard .....	434
<b>Help and support .....</b>	<b>439</b>

# The user interface

---

NoSpamProxy is managed via the NoSpamProxy Command Center. It is divided as follows:

- **Monitoring**| This area provides an overview of the receipt and delivery of emails. Additionally, you can view the event log of all connected roles.
- **Identities**| This area is used for basic configuration of NoSpamProxy. You define send and receive connectors for emails, your rules and notifications, and the connections to components.
- **Configuration**| This area is used for basic configuration of NoSpamProxy. You define send and receive connectors for emails, your rules and notifications, and the connections to components.
- **Troubleshooting**| You use this area for diagnostics. You create log files of the individual NoSpamProxy components or have settings corrected automatically.

## I Actions on the overview page

The available actions are displayed in the lower left corner.

### Refresh

---

Click here to update the data displayed on the overview page.

### Configuration wizard

---

The configuration wizard guides you through all the essential steps of the NoSpamProxy configuration:

**Licence**| Install a license or change the existing license. If you have not yet created any rules, you can have the appropriate standard rules created depending on your licensed functions.

**Connection to the Gateway Role**| If no Gateway Role has been connected yet, you can connect your Gateway Role here. After adding the role, set the DNS name for the server identity of this Gateway Role.

**Corporate domains**| Configuration of the corporate domains. If the gateway has not yet entered any corporate domains when you run the wizard, this step adds the primary domain of the license to the list of corporate domains.

**Local email servers**| Configuration of the local email servers.

**Inbound email delivery**| Configure the delivery of email to local email servers.

**Outbound send connectors**| Configure the delivery of emails to external email servers.

**Administrative addresses**| Configure the administrative email addresses.

**Sensitive data protection**| Set a password to protect sensitive data.

When the wizard is complete, perform the following steps:

- Check the configuration of the receive connectors.
- Import your own personal cryptographic keys to use NoSpamProxy Encryption with S/MIME or PGP keys under certificate or PGP key management. See [\*\*Certificates and PGP keys\*\*](#).

Carrying out these steps ensures the function of NoSpamProxy.

## **Change server**

---

Here you can select a server to access via NCC.

## Language selection

---

Here you can change the display language.

# I Further settings

## Open Disclaimer website

---

Click here to edit templates and rules for your disclaimers.

## Open documentation

---

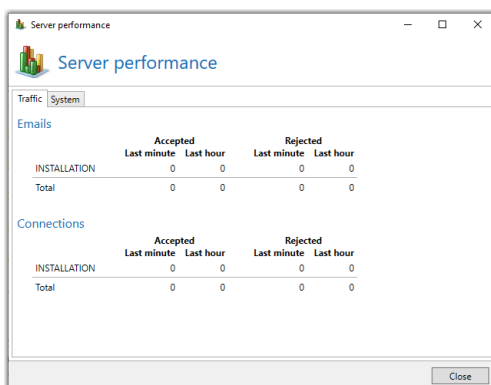
Opens the NoSpamProxy documentation.

## View server performance

---

This action gives you a quick overview of the current processing of emails and the resources currently available.

**Traffic** This tab shows a moving average of the processed emails of the last minute or hour. The page is updated automatically and also shows you whether NoSpamProxy is currently receiving emails.

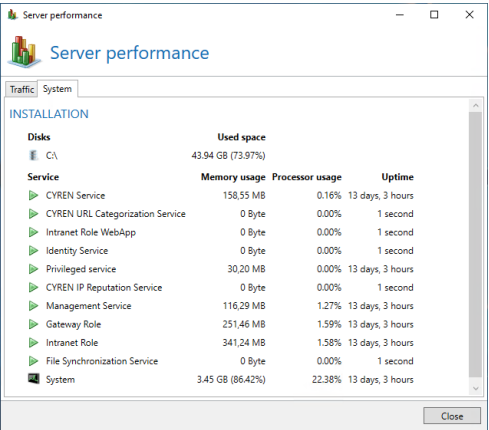


	Accepted		Rejected	
	Last minute	Last hour	Last minute	Last hour
INSTALLATION	0	0	0	0
Total	0	0	0	0

	Accepted		Rejected	
	Last minute	Last hour	Last minute	Last hour
INSTALLATION	0	0	0	0
Total	0	0	0	0

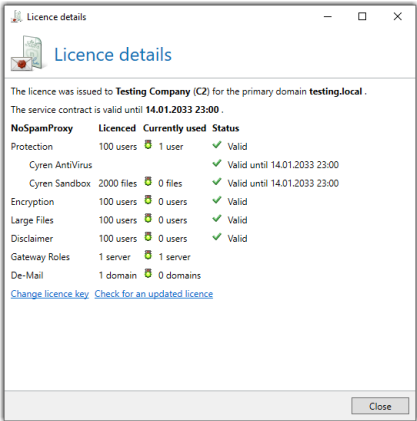
**System|** This tab shows the installed services, their status and the resources used for each system with Intranet or Gateway Roles.



In addition to this view, the performance indicators are also available on the server.

### Manage license

This action opens the dialog for the currently used license. It shows you all relevant data of your license and warns you if problems with the license occur.



Here you can see your C-number, domain and all licensed functions and their validity period.

**Change licence key** Load another licence file and use it in NoSpamProxy as long as the expiry date of the software maintenance is at least as far or further in the future as the licence currently in use.

**Check for an updated licence** Check for changes to the active licence.

## Selecting the update channel

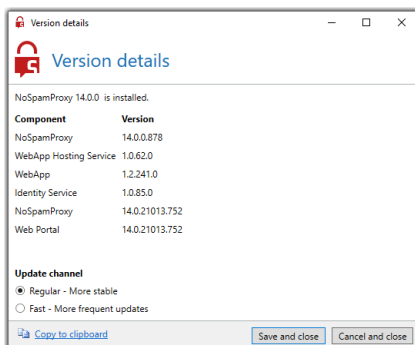
---

- Click on the version number displayed to view details of the version of your NoSpamProxy instance and to change the release channel.

Updates for NoSpamProxy are offered via two update channels:

**Regular Channel** The regular channel is the default setting and offers updates that have been tested for a long time and achieve the highest stability for NoSpamProxy.

**Fast Channel** The Fast Channel offers updates earlier, these have also passed all automatic tests and have also been successfully installed, but have completed shorter test cycles in real environments.





**NOTE:** If you switch from the fast update channel to the regular update channel, you will only receive updates again when the version offered for updating has a higher version number than the one already installed. This may take some time.

# Monitoring

---

This area provides you with all information about inbound and outbound emails. It also contains status information regarding system and email traffic.

<b>Message tracking</b> .....	<b>8</b>
Enabling message tracking .....	8
Filtering search results .....	9
View details on processing an email .....	10
Exporting or importing records .....	11
Report misclassification .....	11
Notes .....	12
<b>Message tracking (Web App)</b> .....	<b>14</b>

# Message tracking

This area displays detailed information about the processing of emails. You can see which emails were blocked or let through, as well as trace the procedure of NoSpamProxy® and the functioning of the rules.



**TIP:** The NoSpamProxy Web App offers additional search options for message tracking. See [Message tracking \(Web App\)](#).

## Enabling message tracking

1. Go to **Configuration > Advanced settings > Monitoring**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. On the **Message tracking tab**, select the **Gather message tracks** option.
4. Configure the following options:
  - **Store summaries**| The period of time for which you can trace emails. The message summary information only allows you to see in the message tracking overview whether and when the email you are looking for has arrived and whether it has been accepted or rejected.
  - **Store details**| The retention time for the associated message details. In the details you will find the ratings of each filter, information about the origin of the email and the duration of the analysis, as well as other useful information. Since this information makes up the majority of message tracking, it is possible to keep it for a shorter period of time than the summary information.

- **URL Safeguard**| The period of time for which the visits of the targets of URLs are stored.
  - **Store statistics**| The period for which you can create reports. To be able to create a meaningful report, we recommend a minimum retention period of 12 months.
5. On the **Emails on hold** tab, configure the retention period for emails that are waiting for an encryption key.
  6. Click **Save and close**.

## Filtering search results

You can use the following search criteria individually or in combination to filter the results.

**Dispatch period**| By selecting under Periods, frequently required searches can be selected quickly.



**NOTE:** A time period must be specified in any case. By default, the start time is set to the current system time - 1 hour and the end time is set to the current day at 23:59.

- **Sender and recipient address**| The email addresses of the communication partners. It can be filtered for local and external addresses. The search can be performed for exact hits or for components of addresses. The search for exact hits is much faster.
- **Subject**| The content of the subject line.
- **Message ID**| The internal identifier of the email.

- **Delivery results**| The status of the delivery.
- **SCL value**| The calculated spam confidence level.
- **Rule**| The name of the rule by which the message was processed.



**TIP:** When entering text, you can always enter the entire text to be searched for or just parts of it.

The search results are sorted by date in ascending order.

## **I** View details on processing an email

The details contain information on the delivery status as well as the signing or encryption of an email.

1. Right-click the record whose details you want to view.
2. Click on **Details**.

or

- Double-click the record.

Here you can view all editing steps and details available for the corresponding record from start to close the connection, among others:

- Connection encryption
- Certificates used by the SMTP server or SMTP client
- Filter results
- General processing errors of NoSpamProxy

- The **Validation** tab shows, among other things, details about the validation of the email, the calculation of the Spam Confidence Level for the Level of Trust assessment, and the filters and actions performed on the email.
- The **URL Safeguard** tab contains information about URLs that have been modified by URL Safeguard.

## **|** Exporting or importing records

You can save the message tracking records as a CSV file on your local hard drive or view saved records in full detail. This function is useful if you need assistance in analysing a data set.

- To export, click **Export all message tracks** in the lower left corner of the details dialog.
- To view, click **Load message track file** in the list of all records found.

## **|** Report misclassification

If emails have been incorrectly assessed as safe or malicious, you can report them to our cloud-based NoSpamProxy services.

Proceed as follows:

- Click **Report misclassification** below the detail dialog.



The reported misclassifications are used to improve detection by 32Guards and by the Core Antispam Engine.

## Notes



**NOTE:** Please consider the data protection regulations existing in your company when configuring this section.



**NOTE:** In order not to let the database size of the message tracking and reports grow uncontrolled, the Intranet Role cleans up the database on a regular basis. All elements that have exceeded a specified age are deleted from the database.



**NOTE:** If you want to discard all message tracking records and statistical data, please select the option **Disable message tracking completely** under the **Advanced Settings** of the Gateway Role. In this case no data will be collected. For example, if you only want to record statistical data, select the option Message tracking records are deleted immediately to delete all message tracking records at 2 a.m.



**NOTE:** If you receive several tens of thousands of emails or spam emails per day, the database size limit may be exceeded with an Express Edition SQL Server. With so many emails, shorter retention periods of message tracking records should be chosen or a SQL Server database should be installed without this limitation.

# Message tracking (Web App)

The Web App offers further functions via a web-based interface, for example additional search options for message tracking.

# Monitoring

---

## Overview

Under **Monitoring > Message Tracking** you will find general information as well as information on the message flow and on signing and encryption.

## Icons used



| The email was transmitted encrypted.



| The email was transmitted partially encrypted.



| The email was signed.



| The email was partially signed.



| The signature is damaged.



| The encryption is damaged.



| The email was received from the Internet.



| The email was sent from a corporate email server.



**TIP:** A list of the icons can also be found under **Legend** in the message tracking overview.

## Rearranging columns

To change the order of the displayed columns, drag the respective column and drop it in the desired place.

# Filtering emails

## Adding conditions

1. Click **Add condition** in the upper left corner of the message tracking.

Addresses	Connection	Message	Validation	Security
Any address	Direction	Subject	Rule	Signed
'MAIL FROM' address	Sender IP address	Attachment	Status	Encrypted
'Header-From' address	Gateway Role	URL	SCL	
Recipient addresses	Transaction ID	Message ID		
	Delivery duration	Put on hold		
	Processing duration			

2. Select and configure one or more conditions.
3. Click **Search** to execute the query.

To remove a condition, click Remove **Condition next** to the respective condition.


## Saving searches

To avoid having to recreate a search you have configured each time, you can save it as a preset. You can then select them from the **Saved searches** drop-down menu.


- After configuring the query, click **Add current search** under **Saved searches** to save it.

## Creating default searches

Default searches are executed each time the message tracking is opened.

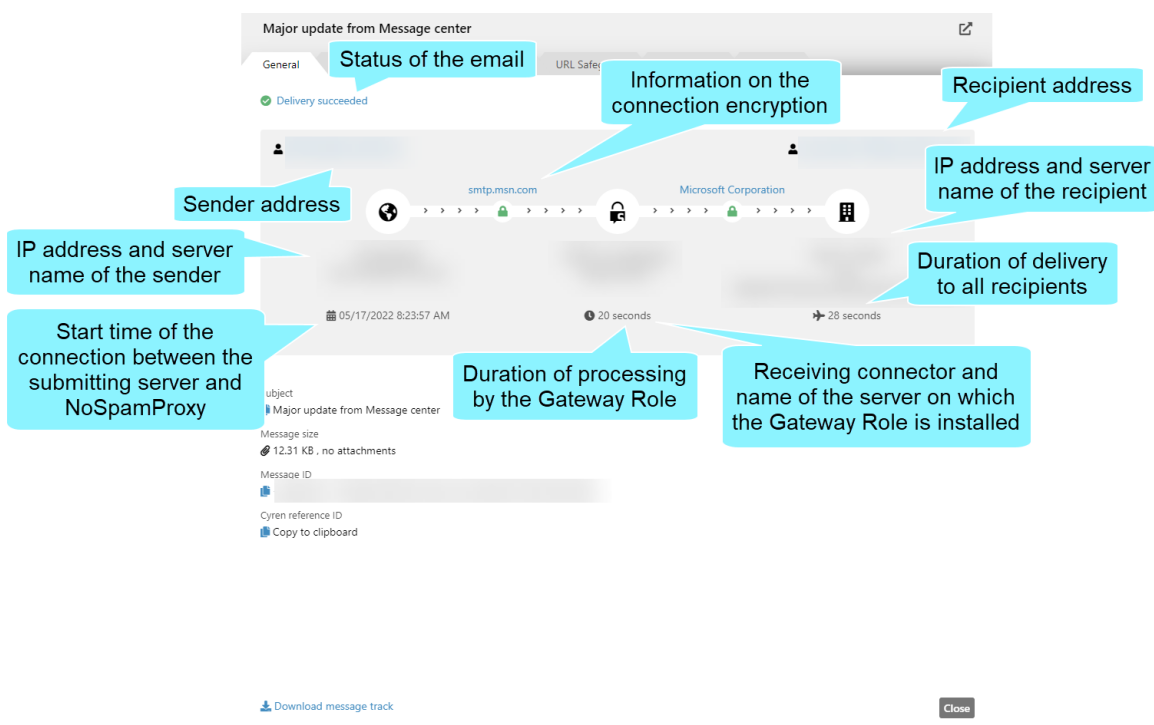
- From the **Saved Searches** drop-down menu, mark the desired search with  to save it as a default search.

## ■ Viewing email details

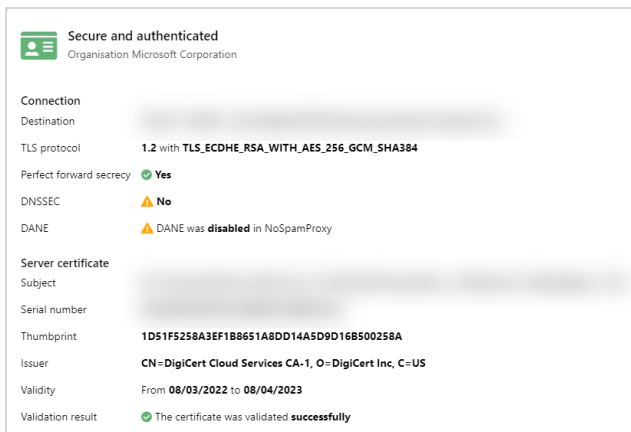
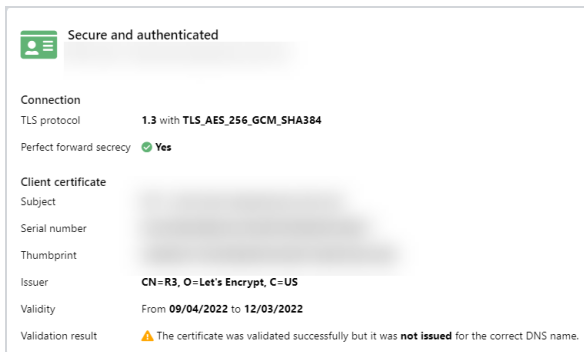
- Click the email whose details you want to view. The detailed view of the respective email opens.
- In the **Details** pane on the General tab, click the  icon to open the Details pane in a new tab.
- Click **Download Message Tracking Record** to save the record as a json file on your computer.

### General tab

Here you will find general information on the email and its attachments as well as on connection and transmission.



- To determine the server name, a reverse DNS lookup is performed based on the IP address.
- By clicking on the send address you can display both the MAIL FROM and the Header-From address (if they are different).
- By clicking on the recipient address you can display all recipients.
- By clicking on the name of the TLS server certificate, you can view details of the connection encryption:



Action by the administrator may be required for certain emails. In this case, click **Action required** to view more information and options:

**Emails on hold** | The email has been stopped for at least one recipient. See [Angehaltene E-Mails](#).

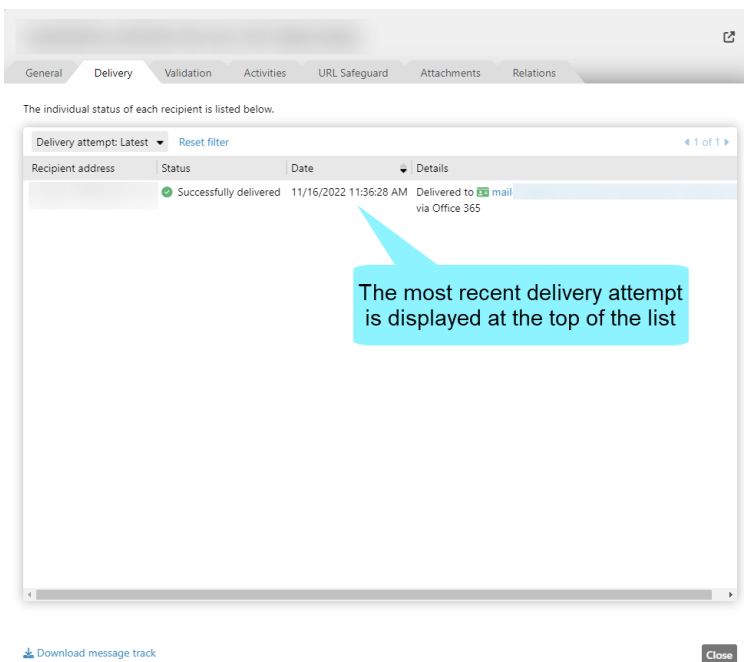
**Locked attachments** | At least one attachment requires approval by the administrator.



**TIP:** Informationen zu den einzelnen Status-Typen finden Sie unter **Status types**.

## Delivery tab

Here you will find information about the individual delivery attempts.



- If not all delivery attempts are initially displayed, click **Show all** to display all delivery attempts.

## Validation tab

Here you will find information about validation, applied filters and executed actions.



**NOTE:** Entries in the **Executed Filters** and **Executed Actions** lists are sorted by **Error message (descending) > SCL (descending) > Name (ascending)**.

Major update from Message center

General Delivery Validation Activities URL Safeguard Attachments Relations

**Result**  
The email has **passed the validation**. The delivery will be attempted by the Gateway Role.  
It was rated with a total of **0** SCL points. The name of the applied rule was **All other inbound emails**.

**Level of Trust**  
The Level of Trust system changed the rating by **0** SCL Points. [Details](#)

**Executed filters**

Name	SCL	Message	Execution time	Error message
32Guards	0	00:00:01		
CSA Certified IP List	0	00:00:01		
Cyren AntiSpam	0	00:00:01		
Cyren IP Reputation	0	00:00:01		
Real-time blocklists	0	00:00:01		
Reputation filter	0	00:00:06		
Spam URI Realtime Blocklists	0	00:00:01		

**Executed actions**

Name	Decision	Message	Execution time	Error message
Content filtering	Pass	00:00:01		
32Guards	Pass	00:00:01		
CxO Fraud Detection	Pass	00:00:01		
Greylisting	Pass	00:00:01		
Malware scanner	Pass	00:00:01		
URL Safeguard	Pass	00:00:01		
S/MIME and PGP validation as well as decryption (preferably inbound)	Pass	00:00:01		

[Download message track](#) [Close](#)

## Activities tab

Here you will find information about how the email was processed on the server. These are, for example, details on the applied encryption, reputation checks, and the use of Content Disarm and Reconstruction or PDF Mail.

This tab also contains information about the consequences of the results of certain checks.

General

Delivery


Validation


Activities


URL Safeguard


Attachments


Relations


 **Connection validation**


 The inbound connection was secured by TLS.


 **Greylisting**


 Greylisting was not applicable for this email.


 **DMARC validation**


 The message passed DMARC validation. It has been sent from **microsoft.com** . [Details](#)


 **Possible CxO Fraud**


 No fraud attempt was detected.


 **Cyren IP address reputation**


 There are no known risks associated with the sender address [redacted] . The Cyren reference ID is [redacted] .


 **DNS validation**


 The IP address [redacted] resolved to hostname [redacted] .


 The hostname [redacted] associated with the IP address [redacted] is valid.


 The hostname [redacted] associated with the IP address [redacted] does resolve back to the IP address.


 'MAIL FROM' domain does resolve to the IP address [redacted] .

 **Sender and recipient validation**

 The DNS records for the sender address passed all validation.

 No homographic attack detected.

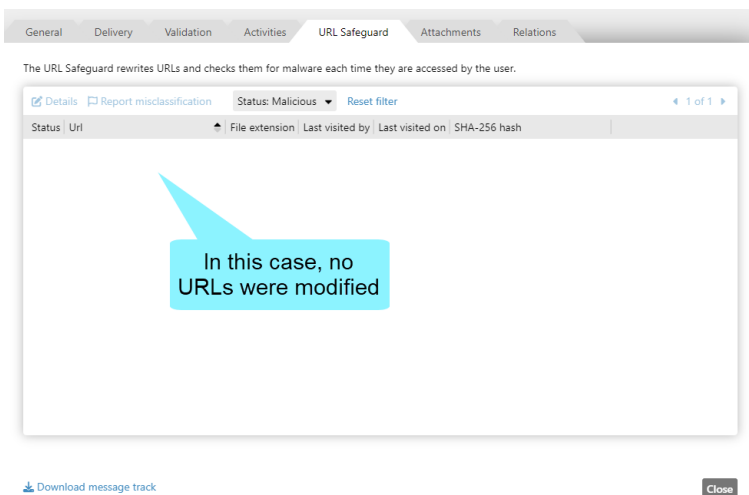
 **Malware scan**

 [Download message track](#)

Close

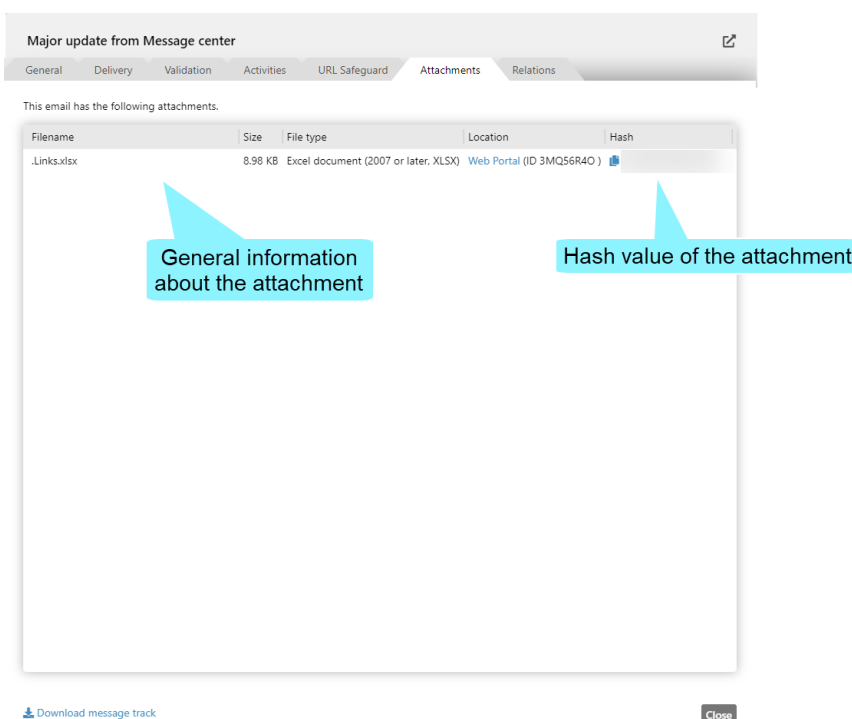
## URL Safeguard tab

Here you can find information about URLs contained in the email or attachments that have been rewritten or blocked by the URL Safeguard.



## Attachments tab

Here you can find information about attachments contained in the email.



For information on locked attachments, see [Locked attachments](#).

## Relations tab

Here you will find links to other message tracking records that are related to this record.

Major update from Message center

General Delivery Validation Activities URL Safeguard Attachments **Relations**

This email is related to these emails.

Type	Status	Date received	MAIL FROM	Recipients	Subject
Initiator	Put on hold	05/19/2022 1:23:44 PM	admin@netspam.email	nsp-preview-1@nsp-preview-1.de	<a href="#">test</a>

Type of relation

Click the subject of the email to open the respective details in a new tab

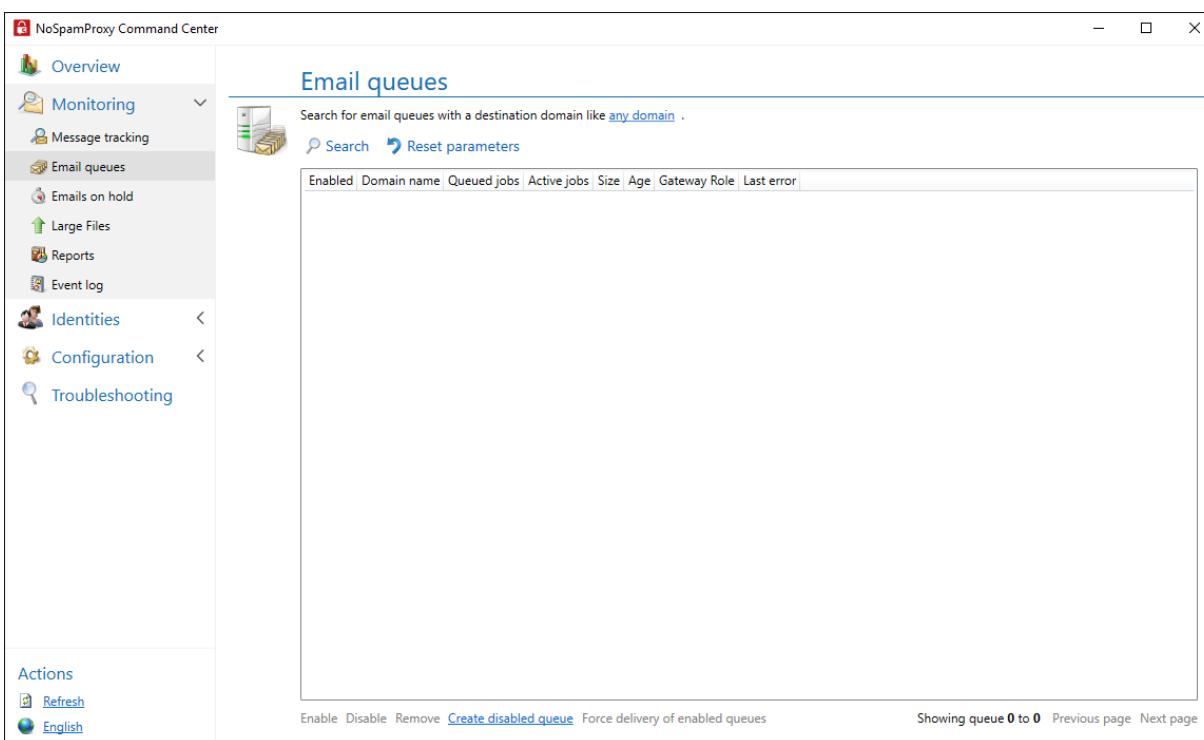
[Download message track](#) [Close](#)

# Email queues

Emails to external addresses are assigned to queues according to your domain.

There is one queue per domain.

Under **Email queues** all active email queues are displayed. Here you can see at a glance to which domains you still need to send emails. You also have the option of stopping the transfer to one or more specific domains.



## Searching for specific queues

1. Enter the search term in the search field.
2. Click **Search**.

All queues that match the search term are displayed.

The individual columns contain detailed information:

**Enabled**| Shows whether emails are currently being delivered for this domain.

**Domain name**| Corresponds to the name of the target domain.

**Queued jobs**| The number of emails.

**Active jobs**| Shows the currently open SMTP connections to the target domain. This is especially interesting for bulk emailing, where multiple emails are sent to the same domain.

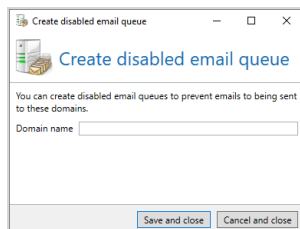
## Start or pause delivery over selected domains

- Click **Activate selected queues** or **Deactivate selected queues** to start or pause email delivery over a specific domain.

## Creating a disabled queue

You can create a disabled queue to prevent the connection to a specific domain in advance.

1. Select **Create disabled queue..**



2. Under **Domain name for queue**, specify the domain name, for example, **example.com**.
3. Save the setting to create the disabled queue.

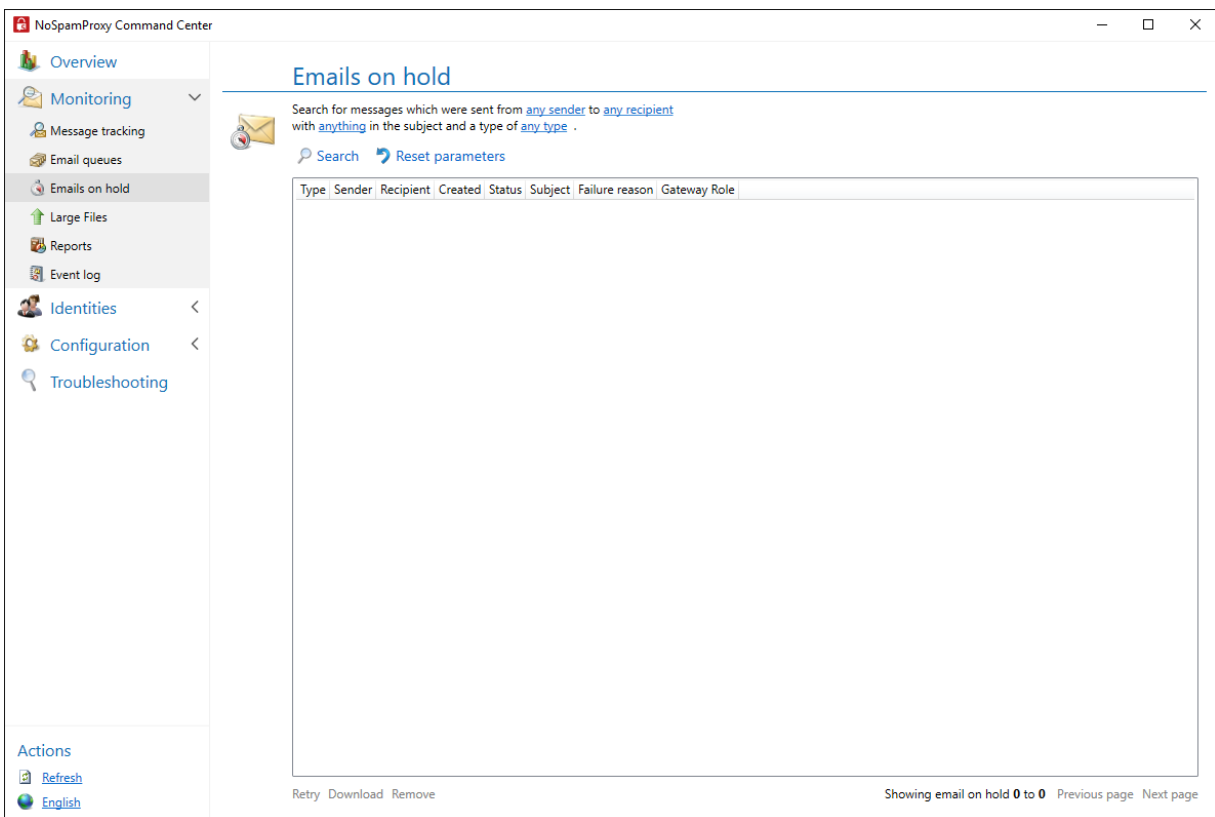
All emails sent to **example.com** are now paused in the NoSpamProxy queues until you reactivate the queue.



**TIP:** A queue can also be deleted. When deleting, you can decide whether or not a non-delivery report (NDR) is sent.

# Emails on hold

Under certain conditions, emails can be put on hold, which means that until further notice the respective email is neither delivered nor rejected, but waits for certain conditions to be met. Email are put on hold in case of missing cryptographic keys, incidents involving file attachments and incidents involving the qualified signature or De-Mail.



## Searching for specific emails on hold

When searching for emails on hold, the filter criteria

- Direction,
- sender and recipient address,
- subject line and the
- status

of the email are available.



**TIP:** For the addresses and subject line, only parts of the text to be searched must be entered.

## **I** In which cases are emails put on hold?

- If you want to encrypt an email using the **Protect attachments with a password** action, but the password sources specified in the action do not provide passwords.
- If no password is provided or no signed email is received from the original email recipient by the displayed email expiration date. The delivery is cancelled and the sender is notified.
- If emails that cannot be automatically processed when adding or validating digital document signatures. The emails are not delivered to the actual recipient, but are listed with the current status and the cause of the failure.
- If errors occur during the delivery process of De-Mails.
- For users of NoSpamProxy Large Files, files that failed to upload are displayed in the list.

## Related steps

- **Reprocessing emails**| You can trigger a reprocessing of emails by clicking **Retry**. If incidents occur again, the affected emails are entered into the list again.
- **Saving emails locally**| You can save complete emails with all associated documents locally by marking the respective incident and then clicking **Download**.
- **Deleting emails**| You can delete emails on hold. You can choose whether or not the sender is notified about this.

## Locked attachments

Attachments that have been locked are stored on the Web Portal. On the **Attachments** tab in the details view of the respective email, you have the following options:

- Click **Large Files** for more information on the attachment, to download the attachment or to run a malware scan.
- Click **Approve attachments** to approve the respective attachments.
- Click **Discard attachments** to delete the respective attachments.



**TIP:** For an overview of all emails that contain files that require manual approval, add the condition **Attachment requires approval** in the message tracking.

## Status types

In the following, the individual status types are explained by means of examples.



**NOTE:** This information is for basic understanding and does not necessarily cover every case.

- **Successful**| The email was successfully transmitted to the recipient.
- **Delivery failed**| An outbound email was rejected by the receiving system. In the "Delivery" tab, you can track the feedback from the receiving system.
- **Temporarily rejected**| The delivering email server receives a response and will make another delivery attempt after the configured interval.
  - **Greylisting**| An inbound email has received at least 2 SCL points for violating our filters.
  - **Recipient does not match the rule of the first recipient**| An outbound email is sent to different recipients and a certificate for encryption is not available for each recipient.
  - **32Guards**| A recently righted host is temporarily rejected for a short period of time to determine its reputation.
  - **Service not reachable**| The Integrated Malware Scanner is usually configured as the only selected **Malware scanner** but is not reachable.
- **Permanently rejected**| The email was rated with at least 4 SCL points due to violation of our filters or rejected by **Actions in NoSpamProxy**.
- **Delivery pending**| The email is still being delivered and will be noted shortly with a different status depending on the result. Details can be found on the tab **Delivery**.

- **Multiple delivery states**| An email was sent to several recipients and noted with different results. Details can be found in the respective entry on the tab **Delivery**.
- **Accepted but not delivered**| The email is received but cannot be processed.
  - **Outbound content filtering**| The stored content filter prohibits the attachment of the e-mail.
  - **Encryption**| A rule with mandatory encryption is used; this was not possible for the recipient.
  - **The sender has established a connection but has not transmitted an email body**| In this case, NoSpamProxy only sees the email envelope with sender and recipient, but cannot process the email. Often such a connection is created to validate an email address of a previously outgoing email and is intended to serve as an anti-spam measure. The process is known as **callback verification**.
  - **De-Mail**| An attempt is made to deliver an email for which there is no configuration in NoSpamProxy to a De-Mail recipient.
- **Duplicate**| An email was delivered twice to NoSpamProxy. The loop (email loop) is prevented and the email is not delivered.
  - An inbound email is delivered by NoSpamProxy to the configured email server. However, this email does not end up in the recipient's mailbox, but the email server sends it back to NoSpamProxy again a few seconds after receiving the email.
  - An inbound email was sent twice with the same message ID from the same or different submitting systems. Each email must have a unique mail ID.

- An outbound email to Office 365 is fetched back into the own tenant. In this case, the own Office 365 connector is the problem.



Office 365 operates on the principle that there are multiple access points for emails. If you configure a connector, it is transmitted to the systems responsible for your client.

If a communication partner receives emails via the same system as you, your connector (inbound) naturally also applies.

Please note that Office 365 has two types of connectors: **Partner organisation to Office 365** and **Organisation email server to Office 365**. The crucial difference here is that the partner connector only becomes active if one of your own domains is specified as the email recipient. The connector **Organisation email server to Office 365** takes effect when your domain appears as the sender and then retrieves the email back to your tenant.

From NoSpamProxy's point of view, the email is correctly delivered to the system specified in the MX. From Microsoft's side, however, the difference to the expected behaviour is that your client receives the email due to the previously mentioned connector instead of the actual recipient client and then wants to deliver it back to NoSpamProxy according to the rules. The email was then delivered from NoSpamProxy's point of view, but incorrectly classified in Office 365.

There are several solutions here. All of them aim to distinguish between emails from you and emails coming to you. You can achieve this either by re-creating the inbound connector in Office 365 (**partner organisation to Office 365**) or by switching to

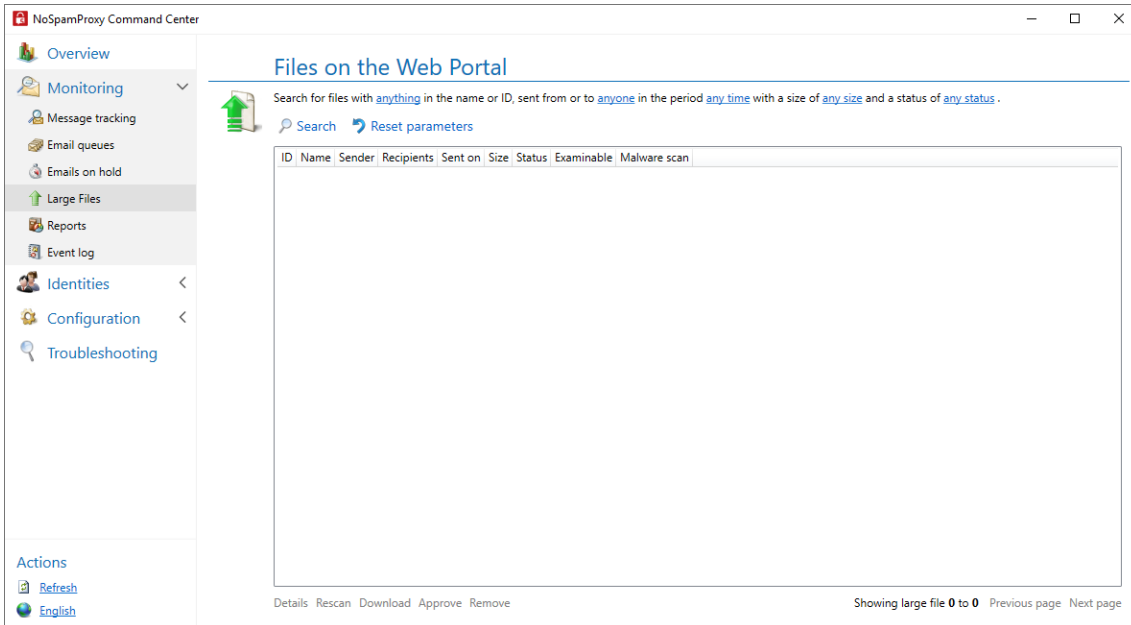


different TLS identities for inbound and outbound send connectors in NoSpamProxy. We recommend here not to transmit a TLS identity in the outbound send connector.

- **Put on hold**| Further actions are necessary for the email to be delivered successfully.
  - **Content filter**| The email is stopped to process the attached files and then delivered with a second message track as a successful email. The action performed can be tracked in the Message Track on the **Activities** tab. You can track the successor of the email in the Message Track on the tab **Relations**.
  - **PDF mail**| The outbound email is converted into a PDF document and encrypted because there is no S/MIME certificate for the recipient. The recipient must assign a password on the Web Portal; until then, the email remains in this status.
  - **Service not reachable**| The Integrated Malware Scanner cannot reach files that are to be uploaded to the Web Portal.

# Large Files

Here you get an overview of all files currently stored on the Web Portal.



## Related steps

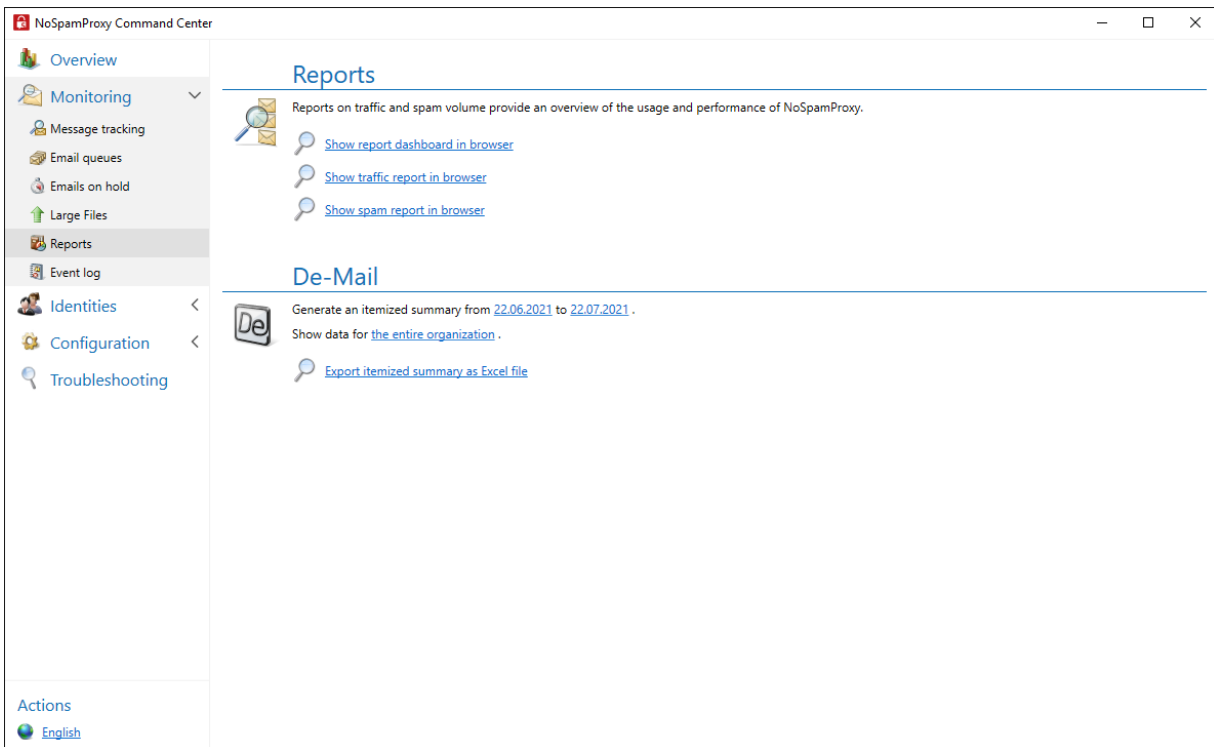
- Deleting files that are no longer needed.
- Sharing files for download that require the approval of an administrator.
- Downloading files not yet released by the administrator to check their contents (if they are marked as **examinable** in the list)
- Scanning files for malware via **Rescan**. If malware is found, the file is deleted and the recipient is informed of the result. The **Malware scan** column shows the time of the last scan.

## Filter options during the search

- **File name**| Specify the full or partial file name.
- **Sender or recipient address**| Specify a full or partial email address. In the overview, only the first recipient address is displayed for the recipient addresses, but all addresses are searched for.
- **Periods**| The period can be limited. If you want it to remain open, clear the check boxes before **From** and **To**. By selecting under Periods, frequently required searches can be selected quickly.
- **File size**| Restrict the file size using the sliders. Deactivate the restriction by the check boxes in front of the sliders.
- **Status**| Select all files or files with certain properties, such as **Waiting for approval**, **Never downloaded** or **Malware scan failed**. You can also search for files that have not yet been approved or where errors occurred during the malware scan. Click **Details** to view additional recipients and any problems that may have occurred during the malware scan.

# Reports

The NoSpamProxy reports give you an overview of your email traffic history and how the volume of spam has changed over the months, as well as information on the email addresses and domains that received the most spam.



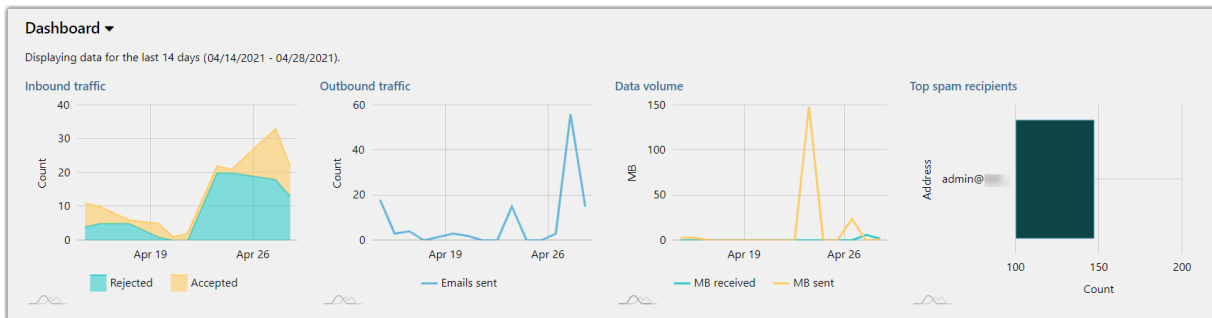
## Reports

The reporting in NoSpamProxy Cloud now offers a quick overview of inbound and outbound email traffic as well as the top spam recipients.



**TIP:** You can hover over a date in all views to see exact details.

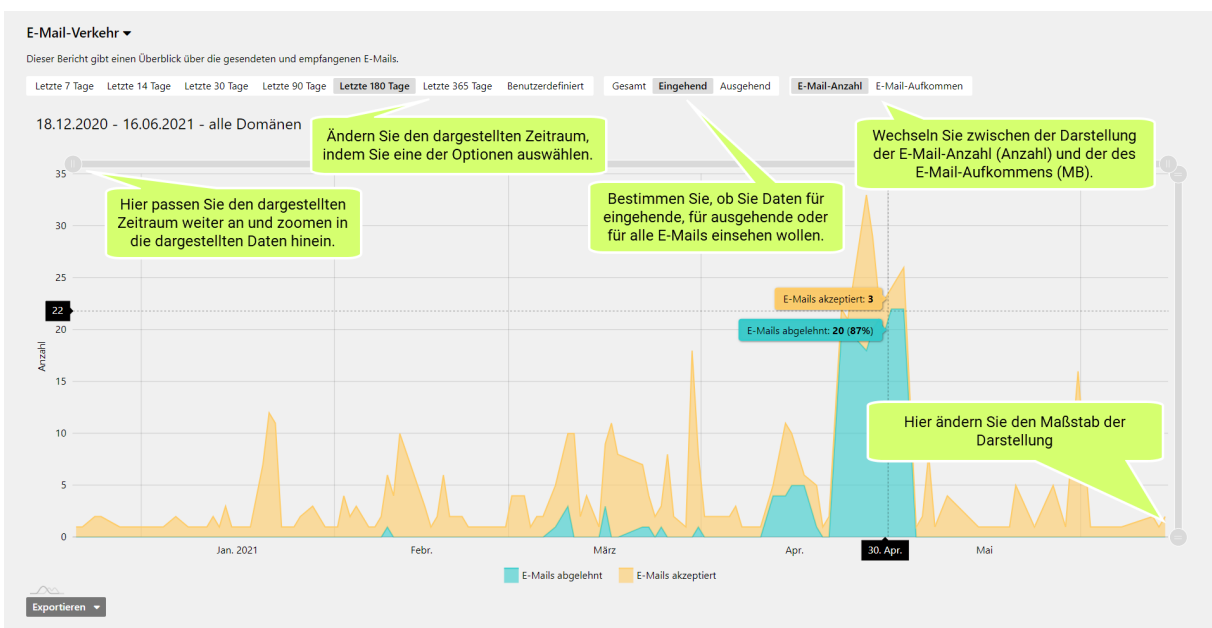
## Dashboard



The dashboard shows you four quick overviews of

- inbound emails
- outbound emails
- the data volume (MB) and
- the top spam recipients.

## Email traffic



The detailed views on email traffic provide you with detailed overviews on the selected period and direction of the email flow. Adapt the individual charts to your needs by, for example, changing the time period displayed or displaying only data for incoming emails.

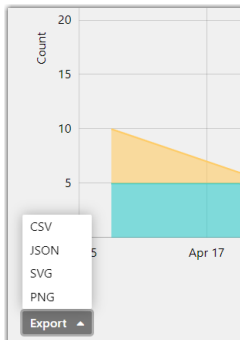
## Top spam recipients

This view shows you the recipients who have received the most spam in the selected period.

## Exporting charts

You can also export charts as files in CSV, JSON, SVG or PNG formats.

1. In the desired chart, open the drop-down menu in the lower left corner.
2. Select the format in which you want to export the chart.



## I De-Mail

With the De-Mail report you can generate an individual connection overview for sent De-Mails as an Excel report.

Proceed as follows:

1. Select whether you want to create an overview for the entire organization or for a specific domain.
2. If necessary, restrict the time period for the overview.
3. Click on **Export as Excel file**.
4. In the following dialog, select where you want to save the Excel file.
5. Click **Save**.

# Event log

The server events relevant for NoSpamProxy are available here.

**NoSpamProxy Command Center**

**Ereignisanzeige**

Suche nach [alle Einträge](#) für [alle Rollen](#) .

[Suchen](#) [Parameter zurücksetzen](#)

Schwere	Ereigniskennung	Datum und Uhrzeit	Rolle oder Dienst	Servername
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION
Warnung	2811	22.07.2021 16:33:13	enQsig Web Portal	INSTALLATION

Zeige Ereignis 1 bis 50 Vorherige Seite [Nächste Seite](#)

**Details**

Markierte Einträge in die Zwischenablage kopieren

## Filtering entries

The following properties can be used to limit the results:

### ■ Roles and services

- ☒ Intranet Role
- ☒ Gateway Role
- ☒ Web Portal
- ☒ Management service
- ☒ Privileged service
- ☒ Message tracking service
- ☒ Identity service
- ☒ Web app

[Alle auswählen](#) [Alle löschen](#)

- Type of events displayed: errors, information and warnings.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fehler
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Warnungen
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Informationen
<a href="#">Alle auswählen</a> <a href="#">Alle löschen</a>



**TIP:** To look at previous entries, you can browse through the results of the search using **Back** and **Next**. To view the details of an entry, select it with the mouse. The details are displayed in the lower part of the page.

# Identities

---

This section gives you access to all external and internal companies and persons, their email addresses and the corresponding cryptographic keys and passwords.

<b>Corporate domains</b>	<b>45</b>
Managing corporate domains	46
Editing cryptographic keys	47
Setting up administrative addresses	49
<b>Corporate users</b>	<b>53</b>
Adding corporate users	55
Automating the user import	56
Setting up address rewriting	65
Requesting cryptographic keys	66
Using cryptographic keys	68
Configuring default settings for users	69
Adding additional user fields	69
<b>Partners</b>	<b>72</b>
Default partner settings	73
Adding partner domains	76
Editing partner domains	77
Adding user entries to partner domains	81
<b>Certificates and PGP keys</b>	<b>84</b>
Configuring certificate providers	86
Managing certificates	104
Checking certificates for validity	109
Certificates in quarantine	111
Managing PGP keys	111

Public key servers .....	116
Pending requests .....	123
<b>Email authentication .....</b>	<b>125</b>
DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) .....	125
Trusted ARC signers .....	135

# Corporate domains

Corporate domains are the domains for which you want to receive emails. The list of corporate domains can also be used in the **Creating rules**. Connections to domains that are not included in the list will be regarded as relay abuse by NoSpamProxy®.



**NOTE:** You must add all local domains to the list of corporate domains. Otherwise, all local emails will be rejected.

The screenshot shows the NoSpamProxy Command Center interface. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities (selected), Corporate domains, Corporate users, Partners, Certificates, PGP keys, Public key servers, Key enrolment, Email authentication, Additional user fields, Configuration, and Troubleshooting. The main content area is titled "Corporate domains" and includes a description: "Corporate domains include all domains that you use for your email communication." Below this is a table with the following data:

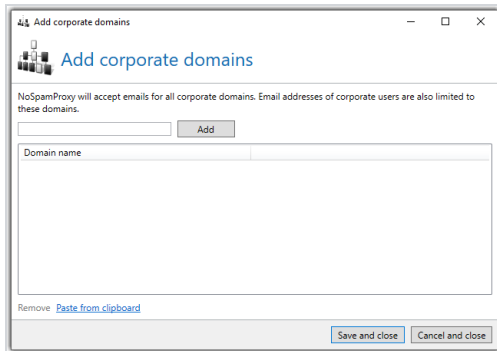
Domain name	Administrative addresses	Associated certificates	Associated PGP keys	DKIM key
example.com	Use default domain settings	John Doe, Max Mustermann	"Max Mustermann" <max.mustermann@example.com> ✓ Valid, "John Doe" <john.doe@example.com> ✓ Valid	example on example.com
example.local	Use default domain settings			example on example.com

Below the table are links: [Add](#), [Modify](#), [Remove](#). Under the heading "Default domain settings", it states: "These settings are used if no more specific settings are configured on a domain. Notifications to corporate users are sent from **example@example.com**. Notifications to external recipients are sent from **example@example.com**. Administrative alerts are sent to **admin@example.com**." There is also a [Modify](#) link.

# Managing corporate domains

## Adding corporate domains

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate domains**.
2. Click **Add**.



3. Enter the name of the domain you want to add.
4. Click **Add**.

## Removing corporate domains

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Select the domain you want to remove.
3. Click **Remove**.

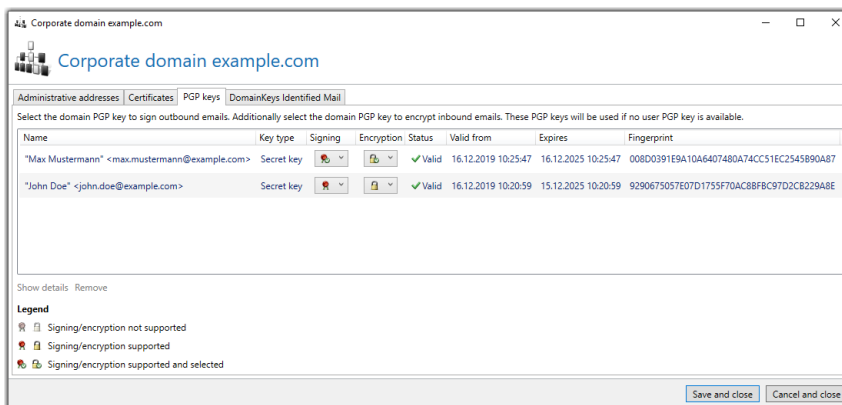


**NOTE:** When you delete local domains, all email addresses in that domain are also deleted from corporate users. If the users do not have any email addresses after this deletion, the users will also be deleted.

## Editing cryptographic keys



**NOTE:** The management of domain certificates and domain PGP keys in the company domains as well as the management of certificates and PGP keys in the email addresses of the **Corporate users** is done almost identically. The following description of key selection applies to both applications.



### Requesting cryptographic keys

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate domains**.
2. Double-click the domain whose cryptographic keys you want to edit **or** highlight the domain and click **Edit**.
3. Switch to the **Certificates** or **PGP keys** tab.
4. Determine
  - under **Signing**, which of the cryptographic keys is to be used for signing emails and

- under **Encryption**, which of the cryptographic keys is to be used for encrypting emails.

5. Click **Save and Close**.



**NOTE:** NoSpamProxy only offers you the options for each cryptographic key that the respective key supports. Please note that only one key can be selected for encryption or signature at a time. If you select a different key at a later date, the first selected key will no longer be used for encryption.

#### Show details

---

- Click **Show details** to view all properties of the key.

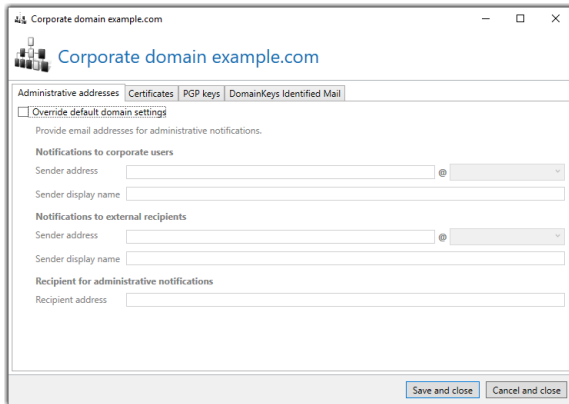
#### Deleting cryptographic keys

---

- Click **Remove** to delete the respective cryptographic key.

# Setting up administrative addresses

## Domain-specific addresses



The screenshot shows a web-based configuration window titled "Corporate domain example.com". It has several tabs: "Administrative addresses", "Certificates", "PGP keys", and "DomainKeys Identified Mail". The "Administrative addresses" tab is active. Inside this tab, there is a checkbox labeled "Override default domain settings". Below this, there is a section titled "Provide email addresses for administrative notifications." This section contains two sub-sections: "Notifications to corporate users" and "Notifications to external recipients". Each sub-section has fields for "Sender address" (with a dropdown menu), "Sender display name", and "Recipient for administrative notifications" (with a "Recipient address" field). At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "Save and close" and "Cancel and close".

NoSpamProxy requires valid sender addresses for the email notifications it sends and an address to which administrative alerts are sent. To configure domain-specific addresses, proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Double-click the domain you want to edit.
3. Select **Overwrite default domain settings** to use the settings made here in place of the default domain settings.
4. Enter the respective addresses.
5. Click **Save and close**.

## Cross-domain addresses

Here you define administrative addresses that are used for sending email notifications and receiving administrative alerts if no specific settings are configured for the domain. Proceed as follows:

Default domain settings

Provide email addresses for administrative notifications. These settings are used when no domain specific settings are configured.

**Notifications to corporate users**

Sender address: example example.com

Sender display name: Max Mustermann

**Notifications to external recipients**

Sender address: example example.com

Sender display name: Max Mustermann

**Recipient for administrative notifications**

Recipient address: admin@example.com

Save and close Cancel and close

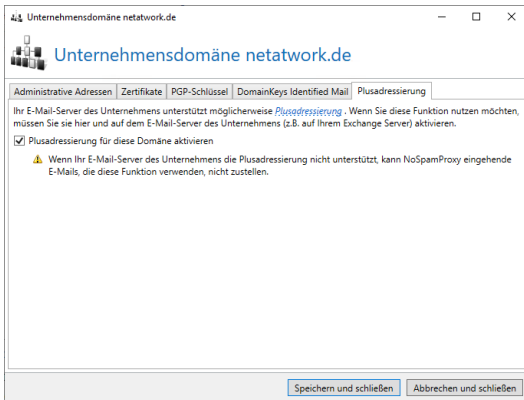
1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Click **Default domain settings**.
3. Enter the respective addresses.
4. Click **Save and close**.



**TIP:** If a domain requires an address that differs from the default address, you can configure this address for the respective domain.

## Plus Addressing

Plus addressing (also known as sub-addressing) is a method of supporting dynamic, discardable email addresses for mailboxes. If activated, NoSpamProxy assigns, for example, the company user with the email address **john.doe@example.com** to the email address **john.doe+newsletter@example.com**.



**WARNING:** If your corporate email server does not support plus addressing, NoSpamProxy will not be able to deliver inbound emails that use this feature.



Plus addresses (also called sub addresses) are **not** counted in the context of licensing, provided plus addressing is activated for the respective domain. This applies both to the licensing of modules and to the licensing of services. Only the underlying email addresses of users for whom plus addresses exist are counted.



**NOTE:** If you want to use this function, you must activate it here **and** on the company's email server, e.g. your Exchange server.

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate domains**.
2. Double-click the domain you want to edit or highlight it and click **Modify**.
3. Go to the **Plus addressing tab**.

4. Check the box **Enable plus addressing for this domain**.
5. Click **Save and close**.



**TIP:** For more information, see the [Microsoft documentation](#).

# Corporate users

As with **Corporate domains**, NoSpamProxy can check the individual recipients and reject emails to non-existent recipients immediately. To do this it is necessary that NoSpamProxy knows all internal recipients. If you use an Active Directory, you can easily import the corporate users.

The list of corporate users is used when you filter for **Local addresses** instead of **Corporate domains** in the rules.



**NOTE:** In order for NoSpamProxy to use the list of corporate users, the scope in the corresponding rules for inbound email traffic on the **Message flow** tab must be changed from **to a corporate domain** to **a corporate email address**. Only now does NoSpamProxy use the list of corporate users to determine valid email addresses.

**Corporate users**

Corporate users represent the members of your organization.

Search for users with [anything](#) in the name, their details or email addresses and a status of [any status](#).

[Search](#) [Reset parameters](#)

Enabled	Type	Display name	Email addresses	Inbound content filtering	Outbound content filtering	Flow Guard
✓	Manual user	John Doe	john.doe@example.com	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Default user settings
✓	Manual user	Max Mustermann	max.mustermann@example.com	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Default user settings

[Add](#) [Modify](#) [Remove](#) [Request cryptographic keys for selected users](#) [Automatic user import](#) Showing address 1 to 2 Previous page Next page

**Default user settings**

These settings are used if no more specific settings are configured on a user.

Allow **any** attachment on inbound emails.

Allow **any** attachment on outbound emails.

Users can send emails to **unlimited** recipients per 60 minutes and to **unlimited** recipients per 24 hours.

[Modify](#)

## Types of users

The list of corporate users can contain two different types of users:

- **Manually entered users**| You can manage all properties of manually entered users in NoSpamProxy. These users can be changed and deleted at will.
- **Replicated users**| Replicated users are **imported** from a directory service such as Active Directory. The properties of these users must be changed in the original source, because in replicated users only a read-only view of most properties is available in NoSpamProxy. All changes will be applied when the user imports are executed again. In replicated users, you can change the activity status of the entire user as well as the activity status of individual email addresses.

## I Related steps

- **Adding corporate users**| All users that are to be managed by NoSpamProxy must first be added. See [Adding corporate users](#).
- **Importing users automatically**| You can automate the import of user data through **Automatic user import**. See [Automating the user import](#).
- **Setting up address rewriting**| Address rewriting changes the email address of a corporate user to another email address. See [Setting up address rewriting](#).
- **Requesting cryptographic keys**| If you have configured the necessary providers, you can use NoSpamProxy Encryption to create certificates and PGP keys for the email addresses of the [Corporate users](#). See [Configuring certificate providers](#) and [Requesting cryptographic keys](#).
- **Setting specific content filters as default**| See [Configuring default settings for users](#).

## I Adding corporate users

To add a corporate user, do the following:

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users** and click **Add**.
2. Enter the name of the new user and (optional) details.
3. Enter all the user's email addresses by typing the local part of the email address and selecting the domain from the drop-down menu.



**NOTE:** The first address entered will be used as the primary address. You can change this in the list of email addresses by selecting **Set as primary address**. The primary address is used for other functions, such as De-Mail.

4. From the list of certificates and PGP keys, select the ones you want to use for the respective email address.



**NOTE:** For more information about editing certificates linked a user's e-mail address, see [Using cryptographic keys](#).

5. (Optional) Set up Address rewriting for the email address.
6. Select the content filter to be assigned to the user or use the [Configuring default settings for users](#).
7. Determine which De-Mail functions should be available for this user.
8. Determine whether the name of this user should be used for the [CxO Fraud Detection](#)
9. Click **Finish**.

## **I** Automating the user import

You can automate the import of user data by setting up multiple user imports in the Intranet Role. This enables you to keep the corporate users in the NoSpamProxy Gateway Role differentiated and up-to-date.

As source, either

- an on-premises Active Directory,
- an Azure Active Directory,
- a generic LDAP source,
- or a text file

can be used.

## New user import via on-premises Active Directory

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Click **Automatic user import** and click **Add**.
3. Select **Active Directory** as the type of user import.
4. Under **General**, specify a unique name, the update cycle and the status of the user import.
5. Select the type of server and the user who is allowed to access it.



**TIP:** The Active Directory search selects the users to be imported. Here you can filter for specific containers, e.g. `OU=sales`, `OU=user`, `DC=domain`, `DC=DE`. In most cases, you will want to import all the users' email addresses. You can also restrict the import to the primary address by selecting the option on this page.



**NOTE:** If you want to enter a specific domain controller, you can enter an IP address or a server name. When the integrated Windows Authentication is selected, NoSpamProxy uses the network service if it is installed on a domain controller. Otherwise, the computer account is used for authentication.

6. **(Optional)** Specify an additional LDAP filter.
7. Under **Groups**, specify which functions each local user who has been imported may use. The functions depend on his group membership.
8. Click **Finish**.

## New user import via Azure Active Directory

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Click **Automatic user import** and click **Add**.
3. Select **Azure Active Directory** as the user import type.
4. Under **General**, specify a unique name, the update cycle and the status of the user import.
5. Do one of the following:

- Specify your global Azure Client ID. To use a global Azure Client ID, you must first establish a global Azure connection via PowerShell. To do this, use the following cmdlet:

```
Set-NspGlobalOffice365AutoImportCredential -ClientId  
YourClientId -ClientCertificateThumbprint
```

ThumbprintIhresNoSpamProxyCertificate

- Enter your Tenant ID and your Client ID.
6. (If no certificate exists) Select a certificate.
  7. Under **Groups**, specify which functions each local user who has been imported may use. The functions depend on his group membership.
  8. (Optional) Under **Additional user fields**, assign values from the directory to the additional user fields.
  9. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** To set up automatic user import via Azure Active Directory in NoSpamProxy, NoSpamProxy must be registered as an app in the Azure portal. See [Registrieren von NoSpamProxy in Microsoft Azure](#).



**NOTE:** NoSpamProxy does not support public folders, as these are also no longer supported by Azure Active Directory.

## New user import via generic LDAP

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Click **Automatic user import** and click **Add**.
3. Select **Generic LDAP** as the type of user import.
4. Under **General**, specify a unique name, the update cycle and the status of the user import.
5. Enter the server and port and select the type of authentication.

6. Enter the Search Root and the class name under which the groups can be found.



**TIP:** You can restrict the search to users with certain properties by applying a filter. You can also restrict the LDAP search in the directory to certain containers.

7. Under **LDAP address fields**, specify additional LDAP fields to search for email addresses. This is necessary if your system does not store the email addresses in the default fields **mail** or **otherMailBox**.
8. Under Groups, specify which functions each local user who has been imported may use. The functions depend on the respective group membership.
9. Click **Finish**.



**TIP:** The **additional user fields** of a user can be filled with values directly by the user import. See DISCLAIMER to learn how to configure additional user fields within an automatic user import.

## New user import via text file

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Click **Automatic user import** and click **Add**.
3. Select **Text file** as the type of user import.
4. Under **General**, specify a unique name, the update cycle and the status of the user import.
5. Specify the path to the file that contains the user addresses.

6. Under **Content filtering**, select the policies for inbound and outbound emails.
7. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** The text file does not require a special format. All email addresses are found and imported regardless of format.



**NOTE:** If you have a license for NoSpamProxy Large Files or NoSpamProxy Protection, you can also select a content filter for all users to be imported here. The content filters are configured under .

## New group in user import



**NOTE:** To enable functions for user groups, an Active Directory connection or LDAP connection must be configured.



**NOTE:** The scope of Active Directory groups must be of the type **Universal**. For more information, see the [Microsoft documentation](#).

Proceed as follows:

1. Search for the group you want to authorize and select it.



**NOTE:** If you have licensed NoSpamProxy Large Files or NoSpamProxy Protection, you can select the ones used for each group.

2. Select the content filter settings for inbound and outbound emails.
3. Set the hourly and daily limits for the Flow Guard.
4. Select whether you want to use all members of the group for CxO Fraud Detection.
5. Under **Automatic key enrolment**, select an already configured cryptographic key provider. The Intranet Role will create a key with the provider if a valid key does not already exist.
6. Specify which De-Mail functions are made available to the members of this group.



**NOTE:** All users who want to use De-Mail need a De-Mail address. You can have these created using the address management according to a replacement pattern or manually using an address rewriting. A warning is displayed in the event log for users who do not have a valid De-Mail address. If the members of the group are not allowed to send De-Mails, this dialog cannot be used.

7. (If De-Mail is available) Select whether the address rewriting is to be created automatically according to the stored pattern or manually via the address rewriting node.



**NOTE:** If you want to have the address descriptions created automatically, you can either have individual entries created or use the group mailbox functionality. For individual entries, a unique De-Mail address is generated for each user for his primary email address. To do this, you define a template in the dialog according to which the address is to be created.

8. (If De-Mail is available) Use one of the predefined replacement templates and customise it if you do not want to create the replacement entry completely manually. Alternatively the group mailbox functionality can be used.
9. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** If a user is removed from the group, automatically requested certificates and PGP keys are not revoked. This must be done manually by the system administrator.



**WARNING:** Email addresses are only imported if the domain is also stored in the corporate domains of NoSpamProxy. All others are not imported.

**Available replacement entries are available for the individual entries in the automatic creation of address rewritings:**

**First name %g|** When using '%g', the first name of the user is used. For example, for the user 'Jane Doe' the first name 'Jane' is inserted.

**First letter of first name %1g|** When using '%1g', the first letter of the user's first name is used. You can also use other numbers instead of '1' to use several letters of the surname. For example, for the user 'Jane Doe' the part 'Ja' of the first name is inserted when using '%2g'.

**Last name %s|** When using '%s', the last name of the user is used. For example, for the user 'Jane Doe' the surname 'Doe' is inserted.

**First letter of last name %1s|** When using '%1s', the first letter of the user's last name is used. You can also use other numbers instead of '1' to use several letters of the surname. For example, for the user 'Jane Doe', when using '%3s', the 'Doe' part of the surname is inserted.

**Local part %p|** When using '%p', the local part of the primary email address is used. For example, for the address 'jane.doe@example.com' the local part 'jane.doe' is inserted.

**Domain without TLD %c|** When using '%c', the domain of the primary email address is used without the top-level domain such as '.de', '.net', '.com' etc. For example, for the domain 'example.com' the domain name 'example' is inserted.

## Setting up address rewriting



The address rewriting rewrites the email address of a company user to a different email address. This allows corporate users to contact external email recipients through email addresses other than their own. The email will appear to have been sent from the rewritten address.

For emails to local addresses, the system verifies whether the recipient is an entry from the external addresses of the address rewriting. The address is then sent to the local address of the entry.

Other use cases are so-called group mailboxes. In this case, different local email addresses are rewritten to one address. e.g. **info@example.com**.

Proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Double-click the user for whom you want to set up address rewriting or select the user and click **Modify**.
3. Switch to the **Email addresses** tab.
4. Double-click the email address you want to rewrite or highlight it and click **Modify**.
5. Switch to the **Address rewriting** tab and click **Add**.

6. Enter the following:

- an external address that is used for sending.
- the behaviour when receiving emails for the external address.

7. Click **Next**.

8. Specify the scope for which the external address is used.

9. Click **Finish**.

## Requesting cryptographic keys

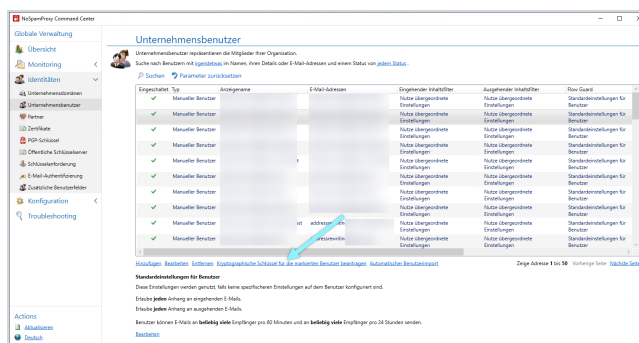


**NOTE:** Make sure you have configured key providers. See [Configuring certificate providers](#) and [Managing PGP keys](#).

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.

2. Select the appropriate users from the list of corporate users.

3. Click **Request cryptographic keys**.



4. Select one of the configured key providers.

5. Click **Next**.

- **Key request issues**| Here all properties of the user that would prevent a successful key request are listed. Problematic properties are for example names that are too long or unusually long email addresses. If users with such properties are present in the listing, they must be removed from the list before requesting the keys. This can be done automatically clicking **Remove invalid** or manually by selecting the affected users and clicking **Remove selected**.
- **Email address/Common name**| All entries available for the selected user are listed here. If an address is marked as primary email address, it is highlighted. Next to the respective email addresses there may be images for the already existing cryptographic keys. The left image shows whether certificates are linked to the email address, the right image shows the presence of PGP keys. Neither picture provides any information about the status of the certificates or the current type of use. Before the key request, make sure that the correct email addresses and common names are selected for certificate creation.

6. Click **Next** and then **Request keys and close**.

The cryptographic keys are requested for and appear among the respective corporate users after completion.

## **| See also**

**Managing PGP keys**

## Using cryptographic keys



**NOTE:** The management of domain certificates and domain PGP keys under the corporate domains and the administration of certificates and PGP keys under the email addresses of corporate users is practically identical. The key selection process is described centrally here.

To use a cryptographic key for your domains, you must perform several steps.

1. Import the key for your corporate domain. See [Managing certificates](#) and [Importing PGP keys](#).
2. Make sure that the domain of the key is included in your corporate domains.
3. Create a user in the [Corporate users](#) to which the email address of the certificate will be assigned.  
*This email address automatically contains your imported certificate.*
4. Go to the cryptographic keys of the email address using the **Modify cryptographic keys** function.
5. Select the imported key and then select **Promote to Domain Certificates** or **Promote to Domain PGP Key**.

*Promoting moves the key from the local email address to your corporate domains.*



**NOTE:** After saving, check the signature and encryption settings for your domain certificate in the affected corporate domain.

## ■ Configuring default settings for users

Here you define the settings that are applied to users if no settings have been configured for them.

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate Users > Default user settings**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Select the desired behaviour of the content filter for inbound emails (Inbound filter) and outbound emails (Outbound filter). See [Content filters](#).



This feature is available if you have purchased a corresponding licence.

4. Select the desired behaviour of the Flow Guard. See [Flow Guard](#).
5. Click **Save and Close**.



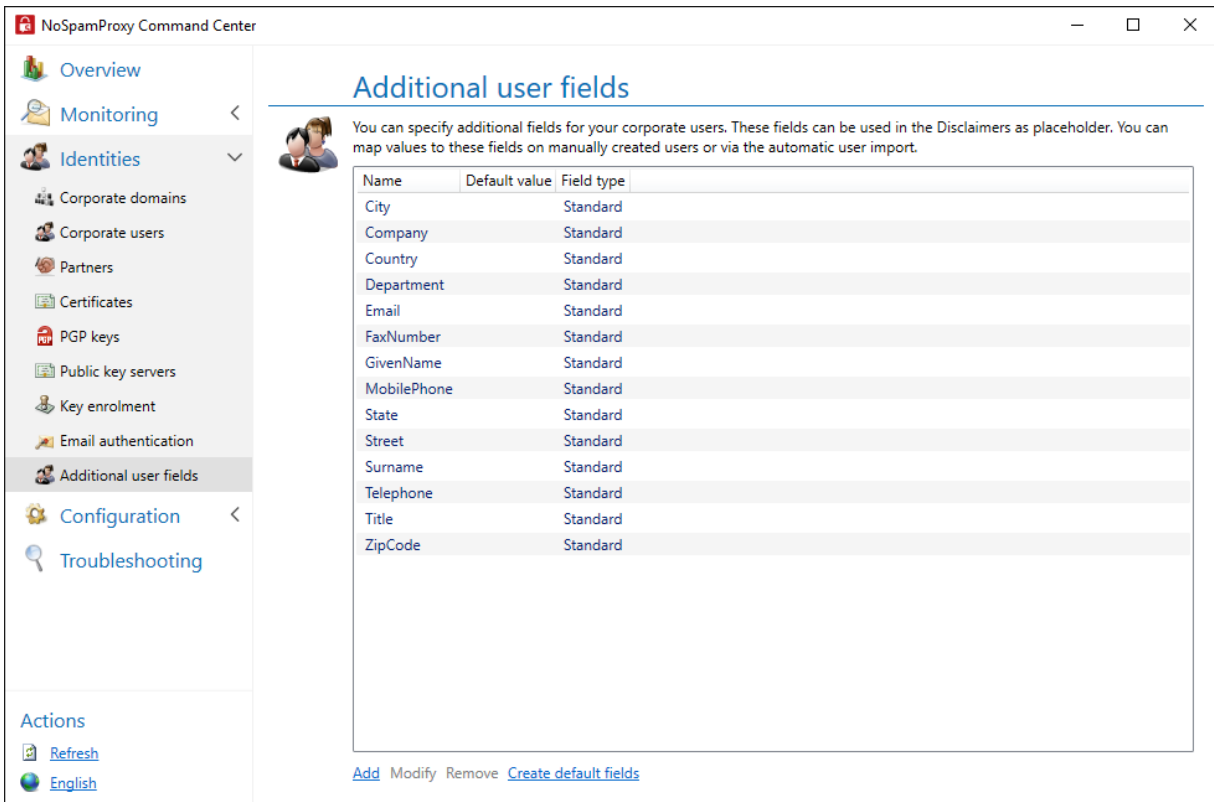
**NOTE:** Content filters that are configured for [Partners](#) are also applied.

## ■ Adding additional user fields



This feature is available if you have purchased a corresponding licence.

You can add additional fields to the data of your company users. You can then insert these fields as placeholders in your disclaimer templates. When attaching the disclaimer to emails, these placeholders will then be replaced by the inserted values.



The screenshot shows the 'NoSpamProxy Command Center' window. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: Overview, Monitoring, Identities (expanded), Corporate domains, Corporate users, Partners, Certificates, PGP keys, Public key servers, Key enrolment, Email authentication, Additional user fields (selected), Configuration, and Troubleshooting. Below the menu is an 'Actions' section with 'Refresh' and 'English' links. The main content area is titled 'Additional user fields' and includes a sub-header with a user icon and a description: 'You can specify additional fields for your corporate users. These fields can be used in the Disclaimers as placeholder. You can map values to these fields on manually created users or via the automatic user import.' Below this is a table with three columns: 'Name', 'Default value', and 'Field type'. The table lists 15 fields, all with a 'Standard' field type. At the bottom of the main area are links for 'Add', 'Modify', 'Remove', and 'Create default fields'.

Name	Default value	Field type
City		Standard
Company		Standard
Country		Standard
Department		Standard
Email		Standard
FaxNumber		Standard
GivenName		Standard
MobilePhone		Standard
State		Standard
Street		Standard
Surname		Standard
Telephone		Standard
Title		Standard
ZipCode		Standard

1. Go to **Identities > Additional user fields > Additional user fields**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Enter a name for the field.
4. (Optional) Enter a default value. This value is used if no value is set on the user itself.

**TIP:**

For most applications, it is recommended to select **Create default fields**. This creates frequently used fields. When the fields are created, the user fields are automatically assigned to Active Directory fields. You can adjust this assignment manually later.

**Default values** are used if the user is not assigned their own values. In the field for the telephone number, for example, the number of the head office can be entered, in the field for the email address the email address of the head office.

See [Automating the user import](#).

**NOTE:**

- Placeholders based on custom user fields are represented in the template editor with an asterisk (\*), for example **[\*CustomUserField]**. Exceptions are placeholders in templates created with NoSpamProxy version 13.2 or smaller.
- Placeholders based on custom user fields are not localised.



**NOTE:** For manually created users, you can edit the fields defined here directly on the user object. If you import your users from a remote system, you can use an automatic user import to define how these fields are filled. If required, you can specify a default value. This value is used if no value is set on the user itself. See [Automating the user import](#).

# Partners

Partners are external communication partners with whom you exchange emails. Settings for partners can be made on the respective partners, the associated partner domain or the respective email address of the partner. The list of partners is grouped according to the respective domains.



**NOTE:** The settings on an email address take precedence over the settings on a domain. Likewise, the settings on a domain have priority over the settings for all partners.

NoSpamProxy Command Center

Overview

Monitoring

Identities

Corporate domains

Corporate users

Partners

Certificates

PGP keys

Public key servers

Key enrolment

Email authentication

Additional user fields

Configuration

Troubleshooting

Actions

Refresh

English

Partners

Search for partners with **anything** in the domain name and a **fixed and diminishing** trust level.

Search

Reset parameters

Domain name	User entries	Inbound content filtering	Outbound content filtering	URL Safeguard	Default encryption	Partner password	Transport security	Trust
company.uno	20	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Default partner settings	Optional	0,	diminishing
mx-ipaddress.test	0	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Default partner settings	Optional	0,	diminishing
naw-mg.test	0	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Default partner settings	Optional	0,	diminishing
spf.invalid.test	0	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Default partner settings	Optional	50, fixed	
spf.test	0	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Use parent settings	Default partner settings	Optional	50, fixed	

Add

Modify

Remove

Showing domain 1 to 5 Previous page Next page

Default partner settings

These settings are used if no partner entry for a specific domain or email address is present.

Allow **any** attachment on inbound emails.

Allow **any** attachment on outbound emails.

URLs contained in trusted emails are **retained** .

URLs contained in untrusted emails are **retained** .

URL tracking is **disabled** .

Automatically choose between S/MIME and PGP.

TLS certificates are verified using **DANE** if possible.

Modify



### Automatic removal of partners

Partners are automatically removed when the Level of Trust value of the respective domain has dropped to 0 **and** the partner does not have any other properties that prevent this, such as stored users, passwords or certificates.

## Related steps

**Determining the default behaviour**| You configure the basic behaviour for trusted and untrusted emails under [Default partner settings](#).

**Adding a new partner domain**| To create a domain for a partner, create it in NoSpamProxy. See [Adding partner domains](#).

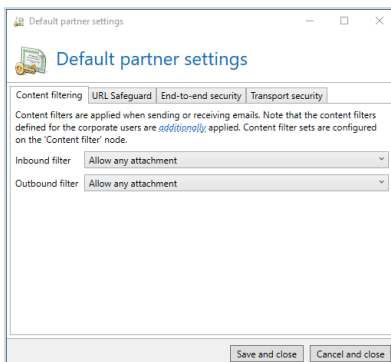
**Adding users**| Add new users of a domain to the corresponding domain as a user entry. See [Adding user entries to partner domains](#).

## Default partner settings

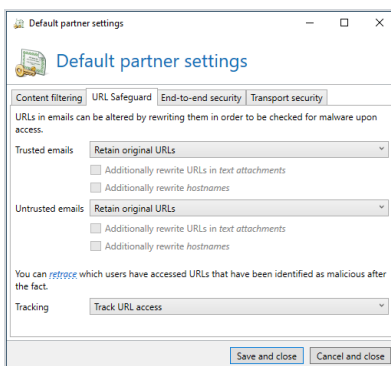
Under **Identities > Partners > Default partner settings** you configure settings that are applied when there are no partner entries for a domain or email address.

- Click **Modify** to open the **Default partner settings** dialog.

**Content filtering** Select a policy for email attachments on both inbound and outbound emails. Content filters are configured under **Content filters**.

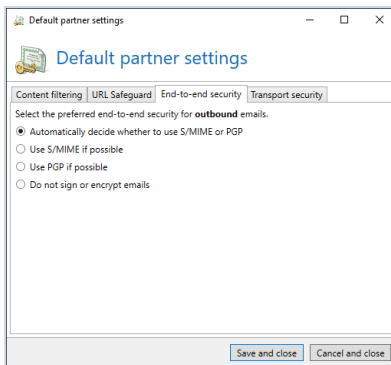


**URL Safeguard** Configure the basic behaviour of URL Safeguard for trusted and untrusted emails. Also determine whether the URL tracking should be switched on or off.

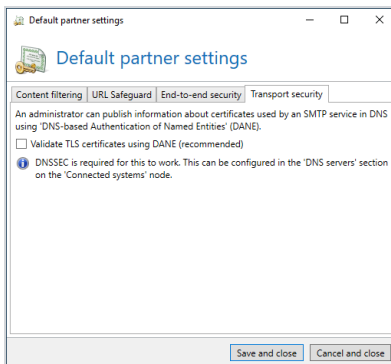


**TIP:** URL tracking allows you to see which users accessed URLs that turned out to be malicious **after the fact**. Details can then be found on the **URL Safeguard** tab of the respective message track. See **URL Tracking**.

**End-to-end security** | Select the desired end-to-end security.



**Transport Security** | Configure the use of a DNSSEC-enabled DNS server.



**NOTE:** By using **DNS-based Authentication of Named Entities** (DANE), the TLS certificates of the transport encryption are checked, so that only certificates that the recipient of the email has classified as trustworthy are accepted. In order to secure TLS certificates via DANE, you must configure a DNSSEC-compatible **Connected systems** under **DNS Servers**.

## Adding partner domains

Each partner domain includes settings for **Content filters**, content filtering and end-to-end encryption, as well as the necessary transport security and trust between domains.

1. Go to **Identities > Partners > Partners** and click **Add**.
2. Enter the name of the partner domain.
3. Select the settings for content filters for inbound and outbound emails.
4. Select the settings for the URL Safeguard.



Details on the configuration options can be found under **Setting up URL Safeguard**.

5. Specify the end-to-end encryption.



**NOTE:** Here you can also set the S/MIME algorithms used to specific values. This function is used, for example, if the partner's email server suggests an algorithm that the partner cannot process properly itself. If both S/MIME certificates and PGP keys are available for the partner, S/MIME certificates are preferred when sending and receiving emails. See **Ende-zu-Ende-Verschlüsselung**.

6. (Optional) Set a domain password. The domain password is used to protect PDF attachments and PDF Mails.
7. Choose the transport security for this domain. The transport security determines whether the communication to the servers of the partner domain

must be encrypted and which certificates are trusted, if necessary.

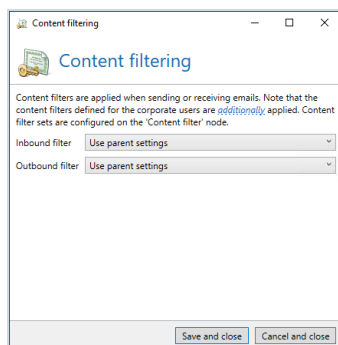


**NOTE:** You can also store additional certificates here that can be used for transport encryption to the target server. To deactivate transport security, untick all check boxes.

8. Specify the trust in this domain. The trust in a domain becomes stronger through emails sent to the domain and approaches 0 again over time without further email communication. You can also set the trust to a fixed value. See **Level of Trust**.
9. Click **Finish**.

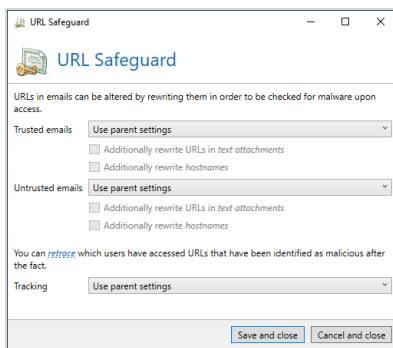
## **|** Editing partner domains

1. Go to **Identities > Partners > Partners**.
2. Double-click the domain you want to edit and stay on the **Domain entry** tab.
3. Select the settings for **Content filters** for inbound and outbound emails.



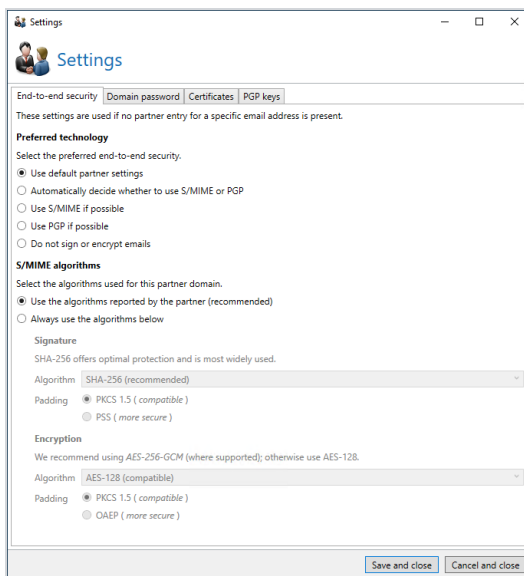
4. Configure the basic behaviour of the URL Safeguard for trusted and untrusted emails. Also determine whether the URL tracking should be switched on or off. You can find our recommended settings at **Recommended partner**

## settings for the URL Safeguard.



**TIP:** URL tracking allows you to see which users accessed URLs that turned out to be malicious **after the fact**. Details can then be found on the **URL Safeguard** tab of the respective message track. See [URL Tracking](#).

## 5. Make the following settings under **End-to-End security**:

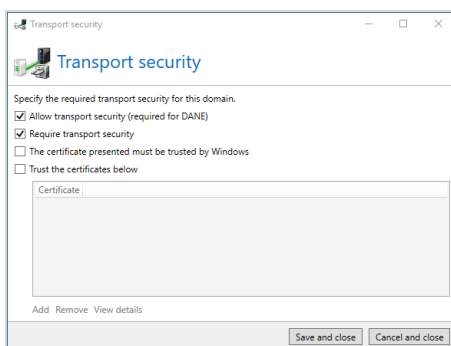


- **End-to-end encryption**| Specify the end-to-end encryption.



**NOTE:** Here you can also set the S/MIME algorithms used to specific values. This function is used, for example, if the partner's email server suggests an algorithm that the partner cannot process properly itself. If both S/MIME certificates and PGP keys are available for the partner, S/MIME certificates are preferred when sending and receiving emails. See [Ende-zu-Ende-Verschlüsselung](#).

- **(Optional) Domain password**| Set a domain password. The domain password is used to protect PDF attachments and PDF Mails.
  - **Certificates**| Configure your certificates.
  - **PGP keys**| Configure your PGP keys
6. Choose the transport security for this domain. The transport security determines whether the communication to the servers of the partner domain must be encrypted and which certificates are trusted, if necessary. See [Transportsicherheit](#).





**NOTE:** You can also store additional certificates here that can be used for transport encryption to the target server. To deactivate transport security, untick all check boxes.

7. Specify the trust in this domain. Trust in a domain is strengthened by emails sent to the domain and approaches 0 over time without further email communication. You can also set the trust to a fixed value. See **Level of Trust**.
8. Click **Close dialog**.



**NOTE:** In individual cases it can happen that the encryption and signature algorithms used within a domain differ due to different collected or imported certificates. To reset them to the same state, use the link Reset S/MIME Algorithms on the Domain entry tab.



**NOTE:** To upgrade a certificate or PGP key to a domain key, go to the partner email address that has this key and click **Promote to domain certificate/PGP Key**.

### Recommended partner settings for the URL Safeguard

---

We recommend the following partner settings for the URL Safeguard:

**Trusted emails**| Retain original URLs

**Untrusted emails**| Rewrite URLs

**Track URL access**|

For **maximum security** we recommend the following settings:

**Trusted emails**| Rewrite URLs and block access, Additionally rewrite URLs in text attachments, Additionally rewrite host names

**Untrusted emails**| Rewrite URLs and block access, Additionally rewrite URLs in text attachments, Additionally rewrite host names

## **I** Adding user entries to partner domains

1. Go to **Identities > Partners > Partners** and click **Add**.
2. Double-click the domain to which you want to add a user entry.
3. Switch to the **User entries** tab and click **Add**.
4. Enter the email address for the new user.
5. Select the settings for content filters for inbound and outbound emails.
6. Select the settings for the URL Safeguard.



Details on the configuration options can be found under **Setting up URL Safeguard**.

7. Specify the end-to-end encryption.



**NOTE:** You can also set the S/MIME algorithms to specific values here. This function is used, for example, if the partner's email server suggests an algorithm that the partner cannot process properly itself. If both S/MIME certificates and PGP keys are available for the partner, S/MIME certificates are preferred when sending and receiving emails.

8. (Optional) Set a user password. The user password is used to protect PDF attachments and PDF Mails.

9. Configure the encryption settings for existing certificates and PGP keys.

10. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** A user entry is associated with an email address and overrides the settings on the domain when communicating with that email address.



**NOTE:** As soon as a cryptographic key or a web portal password is stored for a previously unknown partner, a new entry is automatically created for this partner.



**WARNING:** Deleting cryptographic keys from a partner as well as deleting cryptographic keys from a partner domain or a partner's email address permanently deletes these keys from NoSpamProxy. If you want to use them again at a later date, export the keys beforehand. See [PGP-Schlüssel](#).

# Certificates and PGP keys

NoSpamProxy Encryption requires the certificates or PGP keys of users who want to send signed emails to external email recipients and receive encrypted email responses for the full deployment of the email signature and encryption actions.

- The certificate management gives you access to all certificates that are currently stored in NoSpamProxy Encryption. This includes both own and public certificates as well as root and intermediate certificates.
- The PGP key management gives you access to all cryptographic keys currently stored in NoSpamProxy Encryption.

The screenshot displays the 'NoSpamProxy Command Center' interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities (expanded), Corporate domains, Corporate users, Partners, Certificates (selected), PGP keys, Public key servers, Key enrolment, Email authentication, Additional user fields, Configuration, and Troubleshooting. The main content area is titled 'Certificate management' and includes a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a 'Reset parameters' link. Below the search bar is a table listing certificates. The table has columns: Issued to, Email addresses, Issued by, Store, Status, Valid from, Expires, and Thumbprint. The table contains several rows, including certificates issued to 'John Doe', 'Max Mustermann', and various test certificates. At the bottom of the table, there are links for 'Import', 'View details', 'Export selected', 'Remove selected', and 'Publish selected to Open Keys'. Below the table, there is a message: 'To create new certificates, create a [certificate provider](#). Afterwards request the keys for the desired [users](#).' At the bottom of the interface, there is a section titled 'Quarantined certificates' with a message: 'No certificates are currently quarantined.'

Issued to	Email addresses	Issued by	Store	Status	Valid from	Expires	Thumbprint
John Doe	john.doe@example.com	NoSpamProxy CA 2016	Private	Valid	16.12.2019 10:10:09	13.12.2029 10:10:09	
Max Mustermann	max.mustermann@example.com	NoSpamProxy CA 2016	Private	Valid	16.12.2019 10:16:10	13.12.2029 10:16:10	
PN: Teilnehmerservice Test RAID 112		Test Client 1 Issuing CA	Private	Valid	10.10.2019 16:41:08	09.10.2022 16:41:08	
Test Client 1 Issuing CA		Test Intermediate CA	Intermediate	Valid	21.06.2019 15:03:32	01.03.2037 10:29:11	
Test Intermediate CA		Test Root CA	Intermediate	Valid	17.06.2019 14:28:31	01.03.2037 10:29:11	
Test Root CA		Test Root CA	Root	Valid	06.03.2019 10:29:11	01.03.2039 10:29:11	

NoSpamProxy Command Center

Overview

Monitoring

Identities

Corporate domains

Corporate users

Partners

Certificates

PGP keys

Public key servers

Key enrolment

Email authentication

Additional user fields

Configuration

Troubleshooting

Actions

Refresh

English

PGP key management

Search for all PGP keys with a validity of every validity and anything in the name, email addresses or fingerprint of the key.

Search

Reset parameters

Name	Email addresses	Key type	Status	Valid from	Expires	Fingerprint
John Doe	john.doe@example.com	Secret key	Valid	16.12.2019 10:20:59	15.12.2025 10:20:59	
John Doe	john.doe@example.com	Secret key	Expired	26.02.2020 15:46:13	25.02.2021 15:46:13	
Max Mustermann	max.mustermann@example.com	Secret key	Valid	16.12.2019 10:25:47	16.12.2025 10:25:47	

Import

View details

Export selected

Remove selected

Showing PGP key 1 to 3

Previous page

Next page

To create new PGP keys, create a PGP provider . Afterwards request the keys for the desired users .

Quarantined PGP keys

PGP keys are quarantined and awaiting approval.

Manage approval

## Supported certificate types

NoSpamProxy supports the following certificates:

- Certificates that use the Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA).

The use of ECDSA enables encryption according to the S/MIME standard 4.0 in accordance with **RFC 5751**.
- Certificates that use the Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) procedure.

## General notes



**NOTE:** The Gateway Role automatically collects public certificates from emails sent to local addresses.



**NOTE:** Intermediate and root certificates as well as PGP keys are also collected from emails to local addresses, but no chain of trust can be established for these keys. For this reason, they are first quarantined and must be approved by the administrator.



**NOTE:** You can import additional certificates from files in **CER**, **DER**, **P12** and **PFX** file formats into NoSpamProxy Encryption. The collected certificates are used by or collected by the S/MIME encryption and S/MIME signature actions. See [Signing and/or encryption of emails](#).

## **I** Configuring certificate providers

At **Key Request > Key request providers** you can configure providers to provide certificates or PGP keys to NoSpamProxy Encryption corporate users and view and manage all certificate request requests made.

NoSpamProxy Command Center

Overview

Monitoring

Identities

Corporate domains

Corporate users

Partners

Certificates

PGP keys

Public key servers

Key enrolment

Email authentication

Additional user fields

Configuration

Troubleshooting

Actions

Refresh

English

Key enrolment providers

You can define several providers for enrolment of cryptographic keys like certificates and PGP keys.

Name	Type	Settings	Open Keys	Issues
PGP	PGP provider	DSA with ElGamal	Not supported	

Add
Modify
Remove

Key enrolment requests

The following requests for cryptographic keys like certificates and PGP keys were made by NoSpamProxy.

Created	Issued to	Request type	Request status	Error	Subject distinguished name
---------	-----------	--------------	----------------	-------	----------------------------

Remove failed requests

Remove completed requests

Remove selected requests

Showing request 0 to 0 of 0

Previous page

Next page

Copy details to clipboard



**NOTE:** The saved profiles will be available for future key enrolment requests for corporate users without having to perform the settings saved in the profile several times.

## When are new certificates requested?



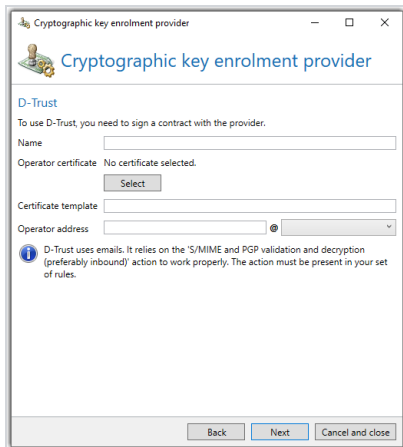
New certificates are automatically requested from the respective Managed PKI 14 days before expiry.

## See also

### Managing PGP keys

## D-Trust

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **D-Trust** as the provider.



The screenshot shows a window titled 'Cryptographic key enrolment provider'. Inside, the 'D-Trust' provider is selected. The window contains the following fields and controls:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Operator certificate:** A label with the text 'No certificate selected.' and a 'Select' button.
- Certificate template:** A text input field.
- Operator address:** A text input field followed by a dropdown arrow.
- Information icon:** A blue circle with an 'i' icon, followed by a note: 'D-Trust uses emails. It relies on the 'S/MIME and PGP validation and decryption (preferably inbound)' action to work properly. The action must be present in your set of rules.'
- Buttons:** 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel and close' at the bottom.

4. Enter the name of the certificate template and the operator address. You can obtain both information from D-Trust.



**NOTE:** The operator address is the email address that is used to handle requests. This address is used as the sending address for all requests and must be reachable.

**NOTE:**

The following certificate templates are supported:

- ADVANCED\_PERSONAL\_ID\_1
- ADVANCED\_PERSONAL\_ID\_2
- ADVANCED\_ENTERPRISE\_ID\_1
- ADVANCED\_ENTERPRISE\_ID\_2
- ADVANCED\_TEAM\_ID\_1
- ADVANCED\_TEAM\_ID\_2

5. Determine whether you want to publish your key to Open Keys. See **Open Keys**.
6. Click **Finish**.



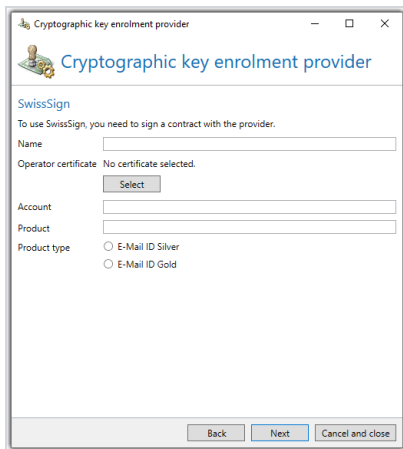
**NOTE:** In order to use D-Trust as a provider, you must have concluded a valid contract with Deutsche Bundesdruckerei and imported the D-Trust certificate into the certificate administration.

## SwissSign



**NOTE:** SwissSign now offers a new MPKI that uses a different URL. NoSpamProxy automatically uses this URL after you have added SwissSign again as a provider for key requests.

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add** and select **SwissSign** as the provider.



The screenshot shows a window titled 'Cryptographic key enrolment provider'. Inside, the 'SwissSign' logo is at the top. Below it, a message states: 'To use SwissSign, you need to sign a contract with the provider.' The form contains the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text input field.
- Operator certificate:** A label followed by 'No certificate selected.' and a 'Select' button.
- Account:** A text input field.
- Product:** A text input field.
- Product type:** Two radio button options: 'E-Mail ID Silver' and 'E-Mail ID Gold'.

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel and close'.

3. Select the operator certificate.
4. Enter the account name and the product name and select the product type.



**NOTE:** For the account name and for the product, please use the data that you have received from SwissSign. Note that these dates may differ from old information.

5. Click **Next**.
6. Determine whether you want to publish your key to Open Keys. See **Open Keys**.
7. Click **Finish**.



**TIP:** Together with our colleagues from SwissSign, we have created the following document, which lists all the points you need to consider when integrating a Managed PKI from SwissSign into NoSpamProxy: **[Notes on using NoSpamProxy with SwissSign certificates](#)**

## SwissSign Silver ID products supported by NoSpamProxy

NoSpamProxy currently supports the following Silver ID products:

### Silver certificates without state, organisation and state field

- Name in the order process: Email ID Silver, email address validated (web interface or partner application)
- From NoSpamProxy Version: 13.2.21230.1449



**NOTE:** Before the above version, the following error message was displayed: **Unconsumed SDN (i.e.: SDN attributes not needed and not utilised; please remove them and resubmit your request): o= [...].**

## Unsupported products

The following Silver ID product is not supported:

## Silver certificates with state field

- Name in the order process: Email ID Silver, email address validated, organisation, canton/province, state (only partner application)



**NOTE:** Take this into account in the procurement process at SwissSign and only order the supported products. If you have ordered the wrong product, you can request the **change from SwissSign using this form.**

## Silver certificates without state field

- Name in the order process: Email ID Silver, email address validated, organisation, state (only partner application)
- From NoSpamProxy Version: 13.2.21111.1701



**NOTE:** Before the above version, the following error message was displayed: **Unconsumed SDN (i.e.: SDN attributes not needed and not utilised; please remove them and resubmit your request): state=[...].**

## Notes on SwissSign Gold products



**NOTE:** If certificates are to be requested for general or system mailboxes, a **pseudo:** must be inserted before the display name (general name/Common Name/CN). This cannot be automated by NoSpamProxy, so this information comes from Active Directory or LDAP. This information should be provided at the beginning and ideally as a first name. To submit the correct order in the CN, use NoSpamProxy version 13.2.21111.1701 or higher

### GlobalSign Atlas

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **GlobalSign Atlas** as your provider.

4. Enter a name for the key enrolment.

5. Geben Sie die Zugangsdaten ein.



**NOTE:** The credentials are provided by GlobalSign.

6. Select the mTLS certificate you want to use.
7. Select whether and which of the values of the key enrolment fields you always want to overwrite. See [Automatic overwriting of values](#).
8. Determine whether you want to publish your key to Open Keys. See [Open Keys](#).
9. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** You must enable an IP address range for the API in the profile. Only then can certificates be requested via the interface.

## GlobalSign (legacy)

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **GlobalSign (legacy)** as the provider.

4. Enter the credentials you have received from GlobalSign.



**NOTE:** Once you have registered with GlobalSign you will receive the login details for the GlobalSign Management Portal. You enter these access data in the GlobalSign configuration dialog. In the portal you can also configure profiles and purchase certificate packages. You also enter this data here.

5. Determine whether you want to publish your key to Open Keys. See **Open Keys**.
6. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** You must enable an IP address range for the API in the profile. Only then can certificates be requested via the interface.



**TIP:** For security reasons, GlobalSign limits the API to certain request IP addresses. In order for your requests to be successful, you must deposit the public IP addresses of your gateway roles with GlobalSign.

GlobalSign. PAR03289\_nstnetwork Logout Technical Support Center Contact Us

ACCOUNT & FINANCE SSL CERTIFICATES MANAGED SSL ENTERPRISE PKI

Step 1: Configure Profile

Profile Configuration

Profile ID: MP20

Organization: [empty]

Organization Unit: [empty]

URL: [empty]

URL(PKCS12 Option): [empty]

User Permission: [empty]

Hash Algorithm: SHA-256 (Recommended)

Encrypting File System: Disabled

Renewal Type: Manual

Non Exportable Option: Disabled

OCSP Option: Disabled

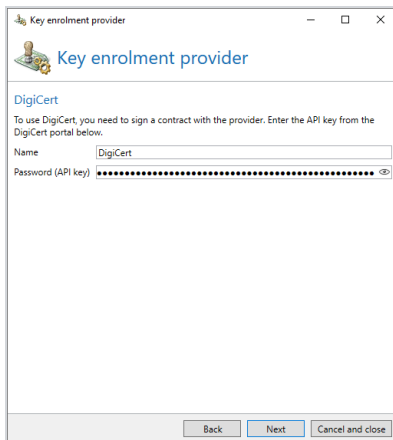
API IP Address range: [empty]

Back Next

## DigiCert

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add**.

3. Select **DigiCert** as your provider.



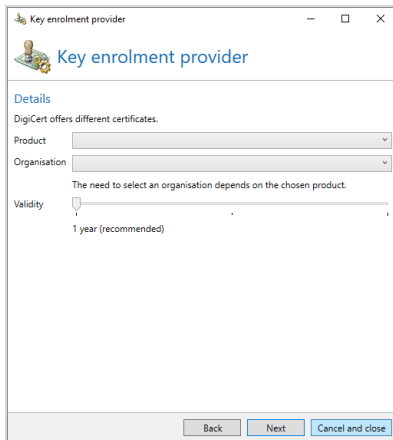
4. Enter a unique name and the API key you received from DigiCert and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** Make sure that the API key is restricted to **Orders, Domains, Organizations**. We advise against configuring the restriction **No restriction**.



**NOTE:** The API key must be assigned to a user who is allowed to view organisations, i.e. either **Administrator (unrestricted)** or **Manager (unrestricted)**.



5. Select the product, the organisation and the validity of the key and click **Next**.
6. Determine whether you want to publish your key to Open Keys. See **Open Keys**.
7. Click **Finish**.

## SSLplus

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add**.

3. Select **SSLplus** as your provider.



4. Enter a unique name and the API token you received from SSLplus and click **Next**.
5. Enter the name of the CA, the name of the product and the validity and click **Next**.
6. (Optional) Select whether and which of the values of the fields for the key request you always want to overwrite. If you tick the check box for city and state or area, either both fields must be filled in or both fields must be empty.
7. Determine whether you want to publish your key to Open Keys. See **Open Keys**.
8. Click **Next** and then **Finish**.

## German National Research and Education Network (DFN)

Many universities and scientific institutions use certificates for secure communication. DFN-Verein offers a public key infrastructure and manages the technical operation of central components as well as the technical and organizational support for local components.



**NOTE:** Further information can be found on the [DFN-PKI website](#).

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **German National Research and Education Network (DFN)** as provider.

Cryptographic key enrolment provider

DFN

To use this provider, you need to sign a contract with the 'German National Research and Education Network' (DFN).

Name:

Operator certificate: No certificate selected.

CA Name:

Registration authority:

Certificate profile:

Revocation PIN:

[Generate new](#) [Enter custom PIN](#) [Copy to clipboard](#)

Store the PIN in a secure place. You won't be able to retrieve it after you leave this dialog.

Publish to DFN directory: ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

4. Enter a unique name and select the certificate provided by the DFN.
5. Enter the name of the CA, the name of the registry and the certificate profile. You can obtain this information from DFN.
6. Either copy the lock PIN to the clipboard or create a new one. Store the lock PIN in a safe place.
7. Select whether you want to include the certificate in the DFN directory and click **Next**.
8. (Optional) Select whether and which of the values of the fields for the key request you always want to overwrite. If you tick the check box for city and state or area, either both fields must be filled in or both fields must be empty.
9. Determine whether you want to publish your key to Open Keys. See [Open](#)

### Keys.

10. Click **Next** and then **Finish**.

## Windows Certification Authority

You can request user certificates from a Certificate Authority (CA) located in your Active Directory.

### Requirements

---

- The operating system of the computer of the Intranet Role is Windows 2012 R2 or later.
- Ihre Intranetrolle ist in einem Active Directory installiert.
- An Enterprise CA is installed in your Active Directory.
- Suitable certificate templates are released on the Enterprise CA.

Useable certificate templates require the following properties:

- The keys are issued without user interaction.
  - The S/MIME certificate extensions are supported.
  - The name of the applicant is transferred to the template.
  - The export of the private key is allowed.
  - The certificate can be used to protect emails.
1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment providers**.
  2. Click **Add**.
  3. Select **Windows Certificate Authority**.
  4. Enter a unique provider name.

5. Select one of your certification authorities.

*After selection, all released certificate templates for this location are displayed.*

6. Select a template.



**NOTE:** The template must meet the properties listed above in order to be used. If properties are missing, notes are displayed below the selection list. After selecting the certificate template, the key size slider is set to the allowed values of the certificate template.

7. Enter the country code in the form of an ISO 3166-1-compliant alpha-2 code.



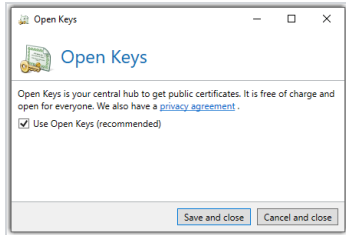
**NOTE:** Below the input field, you can enter the corresponding alpha-2 abbreviation in the input field by selecting the country name.

8. Click **Next** and then **Finish**.

## Providing keys via Open Keys

You can make your public keys of the providers SwissSign, D-Trust and GlobalSign as well as keys of the Active Directory certificate services available via other persons and organisations.

1. Go to **Identities > Public key servers > Open Keys**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Check the box next to **Use Open Keys (recommended)**.



4. Click **Save and close**.

## Automatic overwriting of values

Different values can be specified for the providers 'D-Trust', 'GlobalSign Atlas', 'DigiCert', 'SSLPlus', 'DFN' and the Windows certification authority. If this happens, the values from the company user are no longer used for the certificate request, but the values stored here.

The following values can be overwritten by the different providers:

**D-Trust**| Organisation, department, city, state or province

**GlobalSign Atlas**| Organisation, Department, City, State or Division, Country

**GlobalSign (legacy)**| None

**DigiCert**| Organisation, department, city, state or province

**SSLplus**| Organisation, department, city, state or province

**German National Research and Education Network (DFN)**| Organisation, department, city, state or area

**Windows Certificate Authority**| Organisation, department, city, country

**PGP keys**| None

**NOTE:****Note for users of GlobalSign Atlas**

If your contract for GlobalSign Atlas does not allow values such as city or country in the request, you must activate the override values and enter an empty character string. The server filters empty strings from the request.

## **|** Managing certificates

### **Importing certificates**

1. Go to **Identities > Certificates > Certificate management**.
2. Click **Import**.
3. Click **Select certificates** and select the appropriate files from your directory.
4. Click **Open** to add the files to your selection. Repeat steps 3 and 4 step if necessary.



**NOTE:** If you want to import cryptographic keys from multiple directories, repeat this procedure as often as needed. The other selected files are also added to the list. You can delete unwanted files from the list.

5. Assign the appropriate passwords to certificate files in PFX or P12 format.
6. Click **Next** to start the import. After validation, all successfully validated key files are displayed in the upper list, all unsuccessfully validated keys in the

lower list.

7. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** When private cryptographic keys are imported for a domain that already contains public keys, the public keys are deleted. If private and public keys of the same domain are imported at the same time, the server only stores the private keys.



**NOTE:** When importing a cryptographic key with several email addresses, it is possible that the domains of the different email addresses of this key are both in the list of own domains and in the partners. When importing such a key, its type is important: When importing a private key, the email addresses whose domains are in the list of corporate domains are taken into account, the other email addresses are ignored. When you import a public key, new partners are created or an existing one is added for all email addresses whose domain does not belong to the local domains. The remaining email addresses are ignored.



**NOTE:** If you import root certificates or intermediate certificates as separate files or embedded in end certificates, they are automatically stored in the server's certificate store. Root certificates are then in the list of Trusted Root Certification Authorities and Intermediate Certificates are in the list of Intermediate Certification Authorities of the local computer.

## Exporting certificates

1. Go to **Identities > Certificates > Certificate management**.
2. Select the respective certificate and click **Export selected**.
3. Determine whether the marked certificates are to be saved in a single file or in multiple files.
4. Specify the format in which the certificate file is to be saved.
5. Specify the file name or destination folder for all exported certificates.
6. Click **Finish**.

## Requesting, revoking or upgrading certificates

In NoSpamProxy you can request and revoke certificates via a managed PKI of an external certificate provider. In addition, you can upgrade certificates to a domain certificate - also called a gateway certificate - for company domains or partner domains. If there is no own certificate for the recipient or sender, all emails are encrypted, decrypted or signed with a domain certificate, depending on the certificate and direction.



### NOTE:

The following requirements must be met:

- NoSpamProxy Encryption is licensed.
- A certificate provider is set up (for requesting and revoking).
- The certificate can be used for the entire company (to upgrade the certificate)

**TIP:****Note for Managed Service Providers**

Make sure that you assign sufficient Managed Certificates for the tenants managed by you if a Managed PKI is also to be connected. Otherwise, an error message will be displayed.

**Requesting certificates (manually via user)**

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Click **Request cryptographic keys for the marked users** and follow the instructions in the dialogue.

**Requesting certificates (automatically via a user group)**

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Click **Automatic user import**.
3. Highlight the Active Directory import concerned and click **Edit**.
4. On the **Groups tab**, select the Active Directory group and click **Add**.
5. In the dialogue **Auto enrolment**, select the appropriate provider and confirm.



**NOTE:** With every Active Directory import (according to schedule or started manually), it is checked whether a new certificate is required for a user in the group.

## Revoking certificates

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Highlight the contact and click **Modify**.
3. On the **Email addresses** tab, select the email address with the certificate and click **Modify**.
4. On the tab **Certificates**, select the certificate that is to be revoked.
5. Click **Revoke**.
6. Follow the instructions in the dialog.

## Upgrading certificate for partner domain



**NOTE:** Upgrading a certificate results in it being used for an entire company. The other party must always support this and allow the certificate to be used for this purpose. If you have any questions about the certificate, please contact the issuing authority.

1. Go to **Identities > Partners**.
2. Select the partner domain and click **Modify**.
3. On the **User Entries** tab, highlight the user with the domain certificate and click **Modify**.
4. On the **Certificates** tab, highlight the certificate you want to upgrade and click **Upgrade to Domain Certificate**.
5. Follow the instructions in the dialog.

After upgrading, the certificate can no longer be found in the user entry, but on the tab **Domain entry** under **End-to-end encryption > Edit** on the tab **Certificates**.

## Upgrading a certificate for corporate domain

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Highlight the contact and click **Modify**.
3. On the **Email addresses** tab, select the email address with the certificate and click **Modify**.
4. On the tab **Certificates**, select the certificate that is to be upgraded.
5. Click Upgrade to **Domain certificate**.
6. Follow the instructions in the dialog.

After upgrading, the certificate can no longer be found in the contact, but under **Corporate domains** in the affected domain on the tab **Certificates**.

## ■ Checking certificates for validity

As soon as certificates and their certificate chains are used for email signature or encryption, they normally have to be checked for validity. Note that certain basic requirements must be met for a final certificate to be considered valid.

- The certificate including its complete certificate chain is stored in the certificate store of NoSpamProxy.
- The revocation check of the final certificate and all intermediate certificates contained in the certificate chain was successful.

## About the Certificate Revocation List

Note that the check is preferably carried out on the basis of the Online Certificate Status Protocol. If the respective certificate does not offer this, the check via Certificate Revocation List (CRL) is used. When retrieving the CRL of each certificate, three things must be given:

- The CRL can be retrieved from all gateways.
- The CRL itself is still valid.
- The certificate in question is not on the CRL.

The validity of the CRL can be checked by simply retrieving it (in the case of a list linked via HTTP) via a browser and then opening it with Windows on-board tools. Please note any proxy settings that may apply. See **Konfigurieren eines Webproxy für NoSpamProxy 9.2 und höher.**

## Testing with the help of an automated script

The easiest way to carry out the check is with the help of an automated script.

1. Log on to the system on which the Intranet Role is installed.
2. Run the **script** there. To do this, use either the PowerShell command line or the PowerShell ISE. After running the script, you will be asked for the fingerprint of the certificate to be checked
3. Go to the Message Track of the affected email.
4. Open the **Activities tab**. You will find the name of the applicant there as a link.
5. Right-click the link to copy it.
6. Enter the fingerprint.

**See**

**Der Sperrstatus eines Zertifikats kann nicht abgerufen werden**

## Certificates in quarantine

Certificates collected from emails to local addresses are quarantined and must be approved by the administrator before they can be used by NoSpamProxy.

Under **Quarantined certificates** you can see the certificates that are currently quarantined.

- Click **Approve selected** to confirm the selected keys and activate them for further use.
- Click **Reject selected** to reject and delete the selected keys.



**NOTE:** If intermediate and root certificates are approved, they are installed in the server's certificate store.

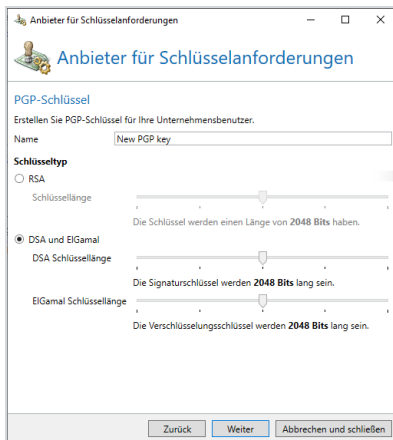
## Managing PGP keys

### Creating PGP keys

You can create PGP keys with different encryption algorithms and key lengths.

1. Go to **Identities > Key enrolment > Key enrolment provider**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **PGP key** and click **Next**.

4. Enter a unique name.



5. Select the PGP key type and key length and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** RSA and DSA with ElGamal are available. The configuration that suits you best depends on the communication partners with whom you want to exchange signed and encrypted emails later. Ask them which key algorithms and key lengths are supported by your infrastructure.

6. Determine the validity for the key.



**TIP:** This makes sense, since keys with a longer key length may be necessary due to increasing computing capacity.

7. Sign the new keys with an existing key.



**TIP:** In certain situations, this can simplify the key exchange, as only the higher-level key - for example the company key - then needs to be exchanged. All PGP keys signed with this key are then automatically considered trustworthy.

8. Click **Finish**.

## See also

### Requesting cryptographic keys

### Importing PGP keys

You can manually import both public and private or secret cryptographic keys.

1. Go to **Identities > PGP Keys > PGP Key Management**.
2. Click **Import**.
3. Click **Select PGP Keys** and select the appropriate files from your directory.
4. Click **Open** to add the files to your selection. Repeat steps 3 and 4 step if necessary.



**NOTE:** If you want to import cryptographic keys from multiple directories, repeat this procedure as often as needed. The other selected files are also added to the list. You can delete unwanted files from the list.

5. Assign the appropriate passwords to password-protected PGP keys.
6. Click **Next** to start the import. After validation, all successfully validated key files are displayed in the upper list, all unsuccessfully validated keys in the lower list.
7. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** When private cryptographic keys are imported for a domain that already contains public keys, the public keys are deleted. If private and public keys of the same domain are imported at the same time, the server only stores the private keys.



**NOTE:** When importing a cryptographic key with several email addresses, it is possible that the domains of the different email addresses of this key are both in the list of corporate domains and in the partners. Its nature is significant here: when importing a private key, the email addresses whose domains are in the list of corporate domains are considered, the other email addresses are ignored. When you import a public key, new partners are created or an existing one is added for all email addresses whose domain does not belong to the local domains. The remaining email addresses are ignored.

## Exporting PGP keys

1. Go to **Identities > PGP Keys > PGP Key Management**.
2. Select the respective PGP key and click **Export selected**.

3. Specify whether you want to export only the public keys or also existing private or secret keys.
4. Perform one of the following two steps:
  - **If you are exporting the public key only**| Specify a path and file name for the files to be exported.
  - **If you export the public key and available secret keys**| Specify a path and file name for the files you want to export. We recommend that you also specify a password for all keys to be exported.
5. Click **Finish**.

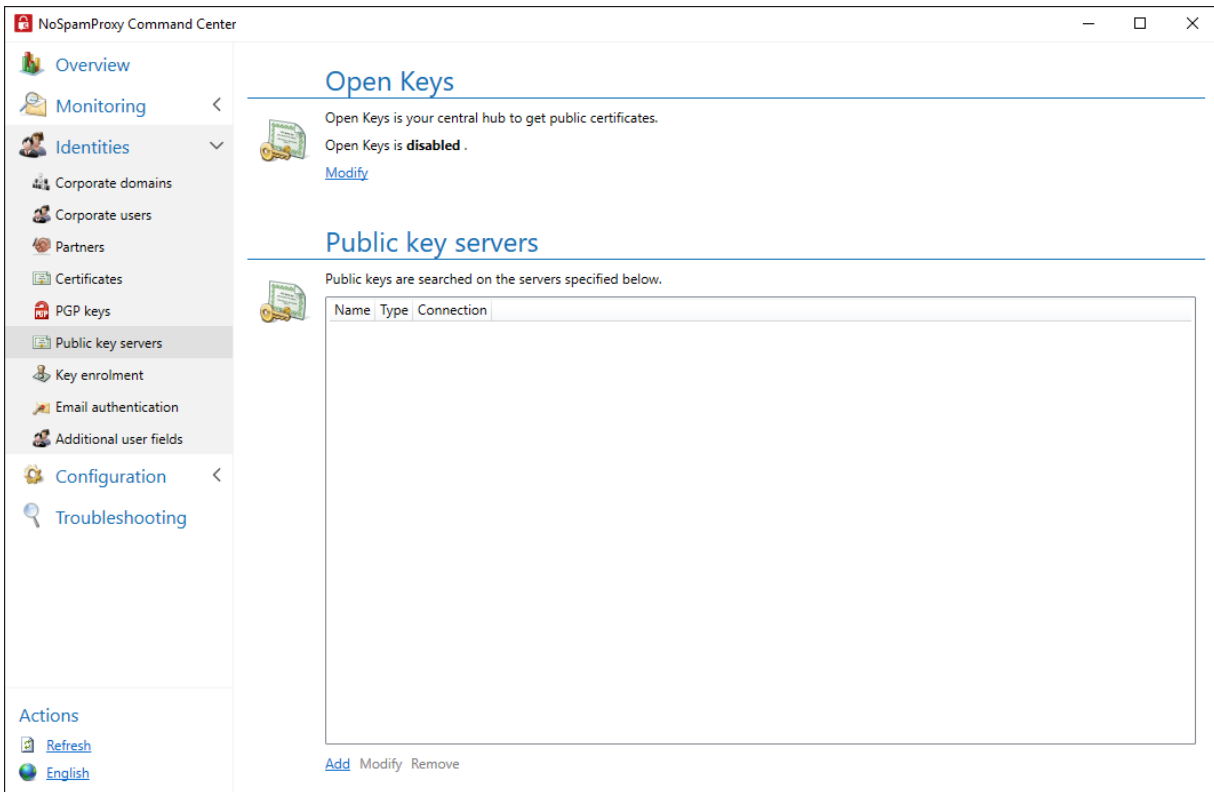
## PGP keys in quarantine

PGP keys collected from emails sent to local addresses are quarantined and must be approved by the administrator before they can be used by NoSpamProxy.

In the dialogue **PGP key Quarantine** you can see the PGP keys that are currently quarantined.

- Click **Approve selected** to confirm the selected keys and activate them for further use.
- Click **Reject selected** to reject and delete the selected keys.

# Public key servers



## Open Keys

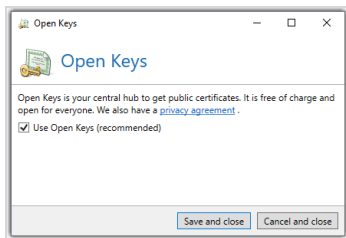
**Open Keys** is the central collection point for public certificates and the best way to query and obtain public certificates. We recommend that you use Open Keys.

Open Keys is used by default to query public certificates. If the service is deactivated, you can activate it manually.

## Activating Open Keys

1. Go to **Identities > Public key servers > Open Keys**.
2. Click **Modify**.

3. Check the box next to **Use Open Keys (recommended)**.



4. Click **Save and close**.

## Publishing certificates on Open Keys

You have the possibility to make public keys available to other persons and organisations via the Open Keys Web Service. The public key provided here is used for encryption, your private key for decryption of emails to you.

Proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Identities > Certificates > Certificate management**.
2. Select one or more certificates.
3. Then click **Publish selected to Open Keys**. The selected certificates are automatically uploaded to Open Keys.
4. Click **Publish** in the following dialog.

## Other public key servers

1. Go to **Identities > Public Key Servers > Public Key Servers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select the cryptographic key provider and configure it accordingly:

## Generic LDAP

- **Name and server name**| The name is only relevant for you and is not used by the software.
- **Port**| Connection to the provider's LDAP server. The default port for LDAP queries is 389.
- **Authentication method**| If the provider requires authentication, you can specify it in the lower section.
- **Search**| You can either perform an unlimited search or limit the search to a specific LDAP container. In the latter case, enter the LDAP path (Distinguished Name) of the container in the **Fully qualified name** field.
- **Filter**| Specifies the search filter used to search for certificates. This must be a valid LDAP search string.

### EXAMPLE:

'(|(rfc822mailbox=%e)(pGPUUserID=%e\*))'. In this case, % is replaced by the email address when the search is executed. In the given example, the search is for items where either the field 'rfc822mailbox' is equal to the email address or the field 'pGPUUserID' contains the email address. The search filter must contain the placeholder for email address (%e) at least once.

- **LDAP fields**| Select whether you want to retrieve X509 certificates, PGP keys or both from this provider.



**NOTE:** You must select at least one type of key and specify from which LDAP field the key should be loaded.

- **Domains** Configure whether the server holds keys for any domains or only for certain domains. If the latter is the case, enter the domains in the list.

### TeleTrust European Bridge CA

- **Name** Enter the name under which you want to save this key provider. All other settings are made automatically by NoSpamProxy.

### Secardeo certBox



**NOTE:** To search for certificates and PGP keys via Secardeo certBox, you have to sign a contract with Secardeo. Without an activation, no access to the services is possible.

- **Name** Give the provider a name. This is only relevant for you and is not used by the software.
- **Connection** Choose whether you want to address the Secardeo Cloud service or a local certBox. For the cloud service, you must configure your firewall to allow outgoing connections on port 389 (LDAP).

### Further LDAP directories with configuration settings

Here you will find some well-known key servers from well-known manufacturers. The list also contains the corresponding settings for integration in NoSpamProxy.



**NOTE:** These directories are automatically queried via Open Keys. Open Keys can be activated from NoSpamProxy version 12.1.

## **A-Trust**

- Hostname: ldap.a-trust.at:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: Unrestricted search on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

## **Arbeitsagentur (For more info on this LDAP server, please contact: IT-Systemhaus.Vertrauensdienste@arbeitsagentur.de)**

- Hostname: cert-download.arbeitsagentur.de:389
- Log in: CN=Username,OU=BA,O=Federal Employment Agency,C=en
- LDAP search: OU=BA,O=Bundesagentur fuer Arbeit,C=de auf (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

## **Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI)**

- Hostname: x500.bund.de:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: Unrestricted search on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

## **D-TRUST**

- Hostname: directory.d-trust.net:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: In container c=en on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

## Datev

- Hostname: ldap.crl.esecure.datev.de:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: Unrestricted search on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary



**NOTE:** This system is queried via Open Keys, but only certificates from trusted root CAs are imported, as not every CA issues certificates suitable for encryption.

## German National Research and Education Network (DFN)

- Hostname: ldap.pca.dfn.en:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: In container with the basis-DN: o=DFN-Verein,c=DE nach (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

## S-Trust

- Hostname: directory.s-trust.com:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: In container dc=s-trust,dc=en on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

### **Siemens PKI**

- Hostname: cl.siemens.com:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: Unrestricted search on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

### **T-Systems Mailpass**

- Hostname: ldap.t-mailpass.de:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: Unrestricted search on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

### **DigiCert, Inc. (formerly VerSign Inc.)**

- Hostname: ldap://directory.pki.digicert.com:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: Unrestricted search on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

### **SwissSign AG**

- Hostname: directory.swisssign.net:389
- Log in: Anonymous
- LDAP search: In container o=SwissSign,c=CH on (mail=%e)
- LDAP fields: userCertificate;binary

## Pending requests

All pending certificate requests are listed under **Identities > Cryptographic key enrolment > Cryptographic key enrolment requests**. Here you can delete failed requests, complete requests or the marked requests.

- Entries for **successfully completed key requests** are automatically deleted from this list after seven days.
- Entries for **pending key requests** will be removed from this list after six hours.
- Entries for **failed key requests** are removed from this list after six hours.



**WARNING:** If you delete certificate requests that are either pending or queued, the requested certificates become invalid and are destroyed. The deletion cannot be undone. With **Copy details to clipboard** you can copy the text of all selected entries to the clipboard. This is helpful in case of problems with the certificate request, as it allows you to immediately pass on all status messages of the affected requests to third parties for support cases.



**NOTE:** With **Copy details to clipboard** you can copy the text of all selected entries to the clipboard. This feature is useful for certificate request issues, as it allows you to immediately share all status messages of affected support case requests with third parties.

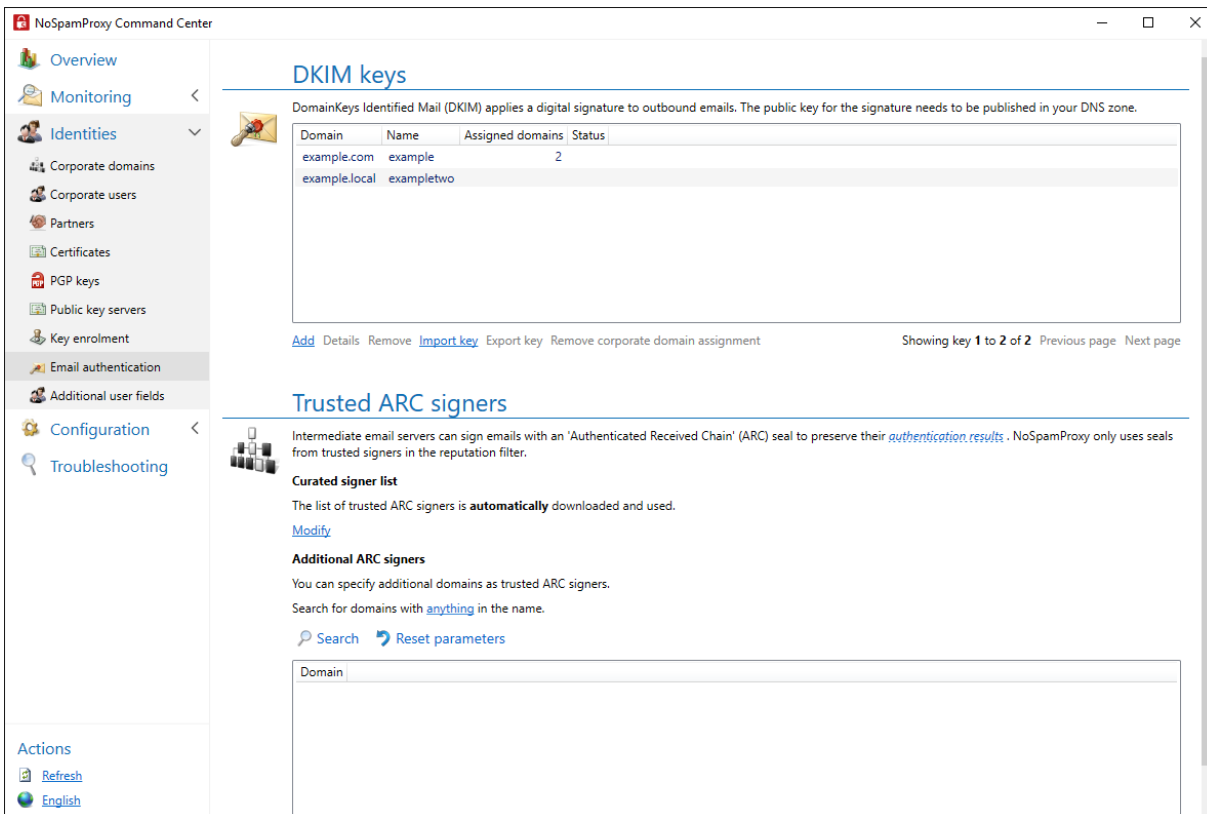
## When are new certificates requested?

---



New certificates are automatically requested from the respective Managed PKI 14 days before expiry.

# Email authentication



**NoSpamProxy Command Center**

**Overview**

**Monitoring**

**Identities**

- Corporate domains
- Corporate users
- Partners
- Certificates
- PGP keys
- Public key servers
- Key enrolment
- Email authentication**
- Additional user fields

**Configuration**

**Troubleshooting**

**Actions**

- Refresh
- English

### DKIM keys

DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) applies a digital signature to outbound emails. The public key for the signature needs to be published in your DNS zone.

Domain	Name	Assigned domains	Status
example.com	example	2	
example.local	exampletwo		

[Add](#) [Details](#) [Remove](#) [Import key](#) [Export key](#) [Remove corporate domain assignment](#)

Showing key 1 to 2 of 2 [Previous page](#) [Next page](#)

### Trusted ARC signers

Intermediate email servers can sign emails with an 'Authenticated Received Chain' (ARC) seal to preserve their [authentication results](#). NoSpamProxy only uses seals from trusted signers in the reputation filter.

**Curated signer list**

The list of trusted ARC signers is **automatically** downloaded and used.

[Modify](#)

**Additional ARC signers**

You can specify additional domains as trusted ARC signers.

Search for domains with [anything](#) in the name.

[Search](#) [Reset parameters](#)

Domain

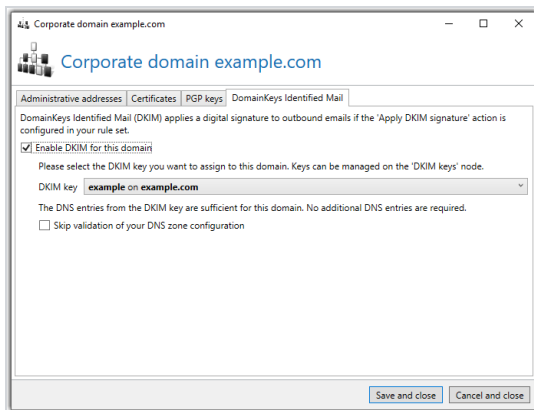
## DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM)

DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) secures outgoing emails with an electronic signature. By evaluating this signature, the recipient can see whether the email was sent from the correct domain (ensuring authenticity) and whether it was modified during transport (ensuring integrity).

## Activating DKIM

You can create the keys required for this process under **DKIM keys**. The secret private part of the asymmetrical key is stored securely in the NoSpamProxy settings and is therefore only known to you.

1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
2. Double-click the domain you want to edit.
3. Switch to the **DomainKeys Identified Mail** tab.
4. Activate **DKIM** for the domain.



5. Select one of the already created keys from the list of DKIM keys.



**NOTE:** If the domain of the DKIM key is identical to the domain you have now configured, the DNS entry you published when you created the key will suffice. If the domains are different, the configuration page will display another necessary DNS entry. If you need to publish more DNS entries, NoSpamProxy prepares the required entry so that you can copy it to the clipboard to publish it to the DNS. The DKIM configuration for this domain must then be terminated. When all necessary DNS entries have been published and are known on the Internet, please start the selection of the DKIM key again.



**WARNING:**

When publishing DNS records, it takes some time for all DNS servers on the Internet to receive these changes. Therefore, wait at least 24 hours after changing your DNS entries before checking and applying them. If you activate DKIM and your DNS configuration is incorrect, emails can no longer be delivered to recipients who evaluate DKIM signatures.

The DKIM signature requires the action **Apply DKIM signature**. This allows you to use DKIM for part of your emails and suppress DKIM for another part through differently configured rules.



**NOTE:** If an internal DNS server is configured for the Intranet Role that does not resolve to the Internet, the DKIM entries must also be created on this DNS server.

## DKIM keys

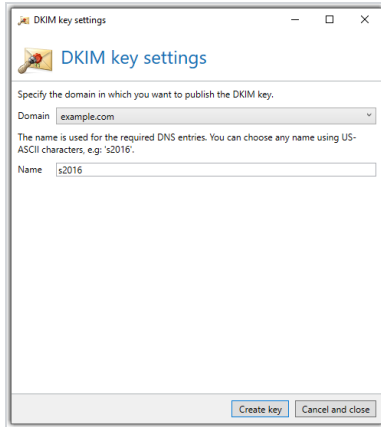
DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) secures outgoing emails with an electronic signature. By evaluating this signature, the recipient can see whether the email was sent from the correct domain (ensuring authenticity) and whether it was modified during transport (ensuring integrity).

DKIM-signed emails can also be read by email recipients who cannot evaluate the DKIM signature. For these recipients, DKIM-signed emails look exactly the same as emails without a DKIM signature.

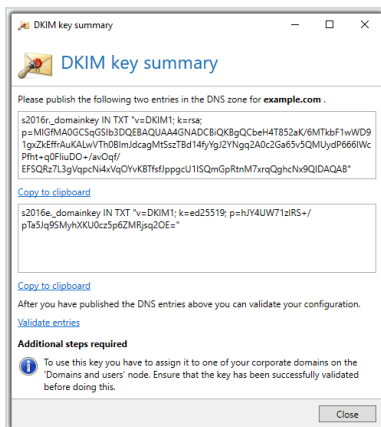
When you add a new DKIM key, the required asymmetric key pair is generated by NoSpamProxy for you. The secret private part of the asymmetrical key is stored securely in the NoSpamProxy settings and is therefore only known to you.

## Adding DKIM keys

1. Go to **Identities > Email authentication > DKIM keys**.
2. Click **Add**.



3. Specify the domain where you want to publish the DKIM key.
4. Specify a selector.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Publish the two entries shown to the DNS zone of the respective domain.



7. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** To use the DKIM key, you must activate it under **Corporate domains**. Before doing so, make sure that the verification of the key is successful.



**TIP:** Alternatively, you can create your own RSA key with OpenSSL, for example, and import it using the corresponding button.

## Enabling DKIM for corporate domains

You will need to activate the DKIM keys you create for your corporate domains. See **Email authentication**.

### Importing DKIM keys

1. Go to **Identities > DKIM keys > DKIM keys**.
2. Click **Import key**.
3. Select the key on your hard disk and click **Open**.
4. On the following page, select the corporate domain where you want to publish the key.
5. Assign a name for the selector and click **Next**.
6. Follow the instructions on the next page.
7. Click **Finish**.


## Exporting DKIM keys



**TIP:** We recommend that you export the DKIM key so that you can recover it in case of data loss. You can do this using the **Export key** button. The key is stored in PKCS#8 format.

## How to use DKIM version 13 or higher

Starting with version 13, NoSpamProxy generates two DKIM keys, one in RSA format and one EdDSA format (Edwards-Curve Digital Signature Algorithm). The RFC for this can be found at <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc8463>.

 DKIM-Schlüssel



# DKIM-Schlüssel

Bitte veröffentlichen Sie diesen Eintrag in der DNS-Zone für `example.com`.

```
key2018r. domainkey IN TXT "v=DKIM1; k=rsa;  
p=  
key2018e. domainkey IN TXT "v=DKIM1; k=ed25519;  
p=
```

[In die Zwischenablage kopieren](#)

Sobald Sie den oben stehenden DNS-Eintrag veröffentlicht haben, können Sie Ihre Konfiguration validieren.

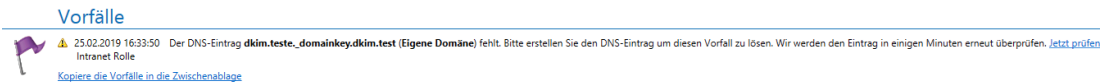
[Eintrag validieren](#)

Schließen

In the example the "key2018r" is in RSA format as before. The "key2018e" is new with version 13 and must be published in the DNS as well.

## Upgrading to NoSpamProxy Version 13

After an upgrade to version 13 the EdDSA key is automatically generated in addition to the existing keys. The following incident is also displayed on the console home page "The DNS entry dkim.teste.\_domainkey.dkim.test ( My Domain ) is missing. Please create the DNS entry to solve this incident. We'll check the entry again in a few minutes."



Emails are considered valid as long as one of the applied DKIM keys has been successfully validated. It is unproblematic if the DKIM key is used in EdDSA format but has not yet been released. However, this should nevertheless be implemented promptly.

If an internal DNS server is configured for the Intranet Role that does not resolve to the Internet, the DKIM entries must also be created on this DNS server.

### Creating a new key pair

Starting with version 13, greater encryption security (2048bit) is used for the RSA key, making the key larger than the 255 characters allowed in the DNS. To do this, the generated key must be correctly wrapped when it is included in the DNS. To do this, use the double quotation mark (") and wrap accordingly there, so that the first part contains less than 255 characters.

Generated key in NoSpamProxy (without wrap):

```
"v=DKIM1; k=rsa;  
  
p=MIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQ
```

```
EAzvf5N0hu8i4wM5quF3e5otVwN/IhKeoEEbkstlIgGY
XSZQ+Tc7tJmkn/QyD8rvTWhAdmrLPfsDt2GwCkKBlupw
P7mtyQYR8bzw2fPCiUMW+Y7FyfRJSAFhRwykkrG1JbCy
J5Phn8qRYH4Rq1lo8BavEr7+/MeEf/CR1gdXH6kQ+SEc
a0M/20JjoH0Ldmvsyb9qnBa5HB58DQr6FpneHXCfAY6m
OI6vykkmVfb/MAR9CZFKrWY+17dPHDhKJDEwsQymCGUu
GwzLw1PcjLVbMSQGXRtdWy8cJbe0a+i02Gwp4yS2urmT
/k8aK4256GhSQbBH3HOCxRgNL3Yb4G1mo92QIDAQAB"
```

Key to be used in DNS (with wrap)

```
"v=DKIM1; k=rsa;
p=MIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQ
EAzvf5N0hu8i4wM5quF3e5otVwN/IhKeoEEbkstlIgGY
XSZQ+Tc7tJmkn/QyD8rvTWhAdmrLPfsDt2GwCkKBlupw
P7mtyQYR8bzw2fPCiUMW+Y7FyfRJSAFhRwykkrG1JbCy
J5Phn8qRYH4Rq1lo8BavEr7+/MeEf/CR1gdXH"
"6kQ+SEca0M/20JjoH0Ldmvsyb9qnBa5HB58DQr6Fpne
HXCfAY6mOI6vykkmVfb/MAR9CZFKrWY+17dPHDhKJDEw
sQymCGUuGwzLw1PcjLVbMSQGXRtdWy8cJbe0a+i02Gwp
4yS2urmT/k8aK4256GhSQbBH3HOCxRgNL3Yb4G1mo92Q
```

IDAQAB"

## Backing up the DKIM keys

Before each update of the NoSpamProxy system to a new version, or during normal backups, the current DKIM key should be exported and backed up. The key can be exported under "Identities > DKIM Keys" and also imported again in case the system is restored.



**NOTE:** Some DKIM validation tools still produce an error with DKIM keys in the new EdDSA format because they expect only RSA formats. Recommended tools are e.g. MXToolBox <https://mxtoolbox.com/dkim.aspx>

## See also

- [DKIM keys](#)

# Trusted ARC signers

## What is the purpose of Authenticated Received Chain (ARC)?

SPF, DKIM and DMARC are important mechanisms in the fight against spam and phishing:

- SPF defines the IP addresses and names of the allowed senders for its SMTP domain.

- DKIM signs emails and thus protects them against alteration and forgery.
- DMARC determines how strictly the receiver should implement the settings made by SPF and DKIM.

Problems can always occur when emails are redirected or forwarded. This often happens, for example, with mailing lists or when applying automatic signatures or email disclaimers.

ARC stores the results of the email authentication performed by SPF, DKIM and DMARC of all servers involved. (Deliberate) modifications of the email thus no longer lead to errors. Each intermediate station that verifies an email with regard to SPF, DKIM and DMARC and adapts the header of the email accordingly also signs its own results with an ARC entry. If the email is sent to the next server via redirection or forwarding, this server must also verify all ARC information of the intermediate stations according to the RFC. This is how the so-called *Chain of Custody* is created.

## When is ARC applied?

NoSpamProxy applies ARC as part of the reputation check by default.



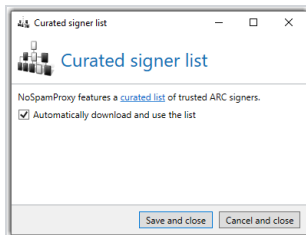
**NOTE:** If one or more DMARC-type checks, i.e. SPF, DKIM or DMARC fail, this result is overwritten by an intact ARC control chain. In such a case, no penalty points are awarded, which would increase the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)**.

## Configuring trusted ARC signers

### Using a list of signers curated by NoSpamProxy

---

1. Go to **People and Identities > Email authentication > Trusted ARC signers > Curated signer list**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Check the box **Automatically download and use the list**.

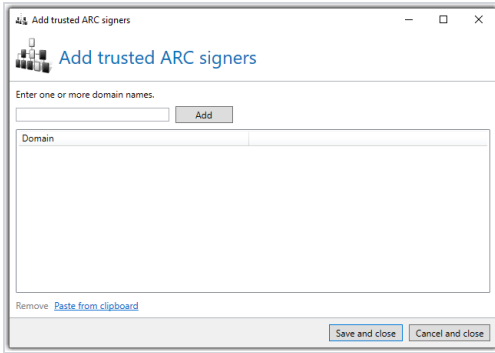


4. Click **Save and close**.

### Using additional ARC signers

---

1. Go to **Identities > Email authentication > Trusted ARC signers > Additional ARC signers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Enter one or more domains into the input field and click **Add**.



4. Click **Save and close**.

# Configuration

---

This section provides access to settings for connecting to the Gateway Role, connection options and Web Portal settings, database settings, notification addresses, and options for protecting sensitive data.

<b>Setting up email routing</b>	<b>142</b>
Adding corporate email servers	142
Creating inbound connectors	148
Creating outbound send connectors	149
Creating receive connectors	158
Shared settings for connectors	165
Invalid requests for SMTP receive connectors	178
Queued delivery	180
Setting up header-based routing	182
<b>Creating rules</b>	<b>183</b>
General Information	183
Steps in creating rules	185
Related topics	193
<b>Creating a content filter</b>	<b>196</b>
Creating content filters	196
Creating content filter actions	201
Defining conditions	205
Example configurations of the content filter	206
How to block potentially harmful file attachments	211
Notes on Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR)	214
Setting up URL Safeguard	215
<b>NoSpamProxy components</b>	<b>217</b>

Intranet Role .....	218
Gateway Role .....	219
Web Portal .....	229
Databases .....	238
How to change the WebPort for NoSpamProxy .....	258
<b>Connected systems .....</b>	<b>260</b>
DNS Servers .....	261
SMS providers .....	262
Archive connectors .....	264
De-Mail providers .....	267
digiSeal server connection .....	269
CSA Certified IP List .....	270
<b>User notifications .....</b>	<b>272</b>
Inspection report .....	272
Email notifications .....	275
How to customise NoSpamProxy notifications .....	275
Using different designs for sender domains .....	281
<b>Presettings .....</b>	<b>290</b>
Branding .....	291
Word matching .....	292
Realtime block lists .....	294
<b>Advanced settings .....</b>	<b>296</b>
Sensitive data protection .....	297
Monitoring .....	298
Subject flags .....	301
Level of trust configuration .....	308

SMTP protocol settings ..... 314

SSL/TLS configuration ..... 320

# Setting up email routing

The screenshot displays the NoSpamProxy Command Center interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities, Configuration (selected), Email routing (sub-selected), Rules, Content filter, URL Safeguard, NoSpamProxy components, Connected systems, User notifications, Presettings, Advanced settings, and Troubleshooting. Below the sidebar are links for Actions, Refresh, and English.

The main content area is titled "Corporate email servers" and contains a table of servers allowed to send outbound emails using corporate domains. Below the table are links: [Add](#), [Modify](#), [Remove](#), and [Get Exchange configuration](#).

The next section is "Inbound send connectors", which shows a table of connectors for routing inbound emails. Below the table are links: [Add](#), [Modify](#), and [Remove](#).

The third section is "Outbound send connectors", showing a table of connectors for routing emails to the internet. Below the table are links: [Add](#), [Modify](#), and [Remove](#).

The final section is "Receive connectors", showing a table of connectors for connecting the Gateway Role to the internet to receive emails. Below the table are links: [Add](#), [Modify](#), and [Remove](#).

Type	Details	Allowed domains	Comment
DNS name	localhost	Any	

Type	Name	Assignment	Cost	DNS routing restrictions
SMTP	Default inbound connector	✓ INSTALLATION	100	From * to *

Type	Name	Assignment	Delivery method	Cost	DNS routing restrictions
SMTP	Default connector for outbound mails	✓ INSTALLATION	Direct delivery via DNS	100	From * to *

Type	Name	Assignment	Binding	Additional settings	Connection security
SMTP	SMTP on all addresses	✓ INSTALLATION	All : 25	Blocking is 30 minutes Tarpitting level is medium	⚠ Disabled

## Adding corporate email servers

All email servers that are to use a corporate domain in the sender address of emails must be entered as corporate email servers in NoSpamProxy.

## Add by IP address, subnet or host name

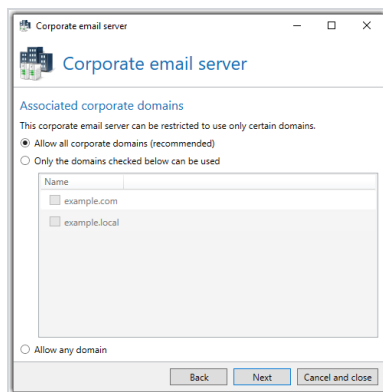
A server is here considered to be the company's e-mail server, provided that it

- sends from the specified IP address,
- sends from an address in the specified subnet or
- the DNS host name configured here points to the address of the server.



**NOTE:** A subnet is specified in the CIDR notation, e.g.  
192.168.100/24

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Corporate email servers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select the **With an IP address, subnet or DNS host name** and click **Next**.
4. Enter the address of the server by specifying a fully qualified DNS host name, IP address, or subnet and click **Next**.
5. Determine which corporate domains are assigned to the server and click **Next**.

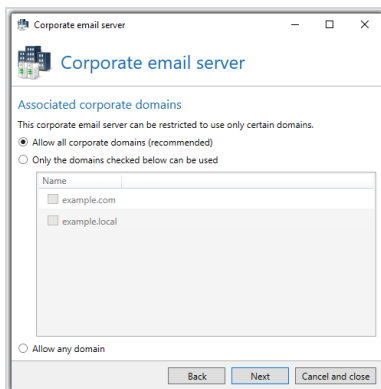


6. Enter a comment if required and click **Finish**.

## Adding via TLS Client Certificate

A server is considered a corporate email server if it performs TLS authentication with a client certificate during the connection. If a root or intermediate certificate is entered here, the server must log on with a certificate that contains the configured certificate in its certificate chain. If an end certificate is entered, the server must log on with this exact certificate.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Corporate email servers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **With a TLS client certificate** and click **Next**.
4. Click **Select Certificate** and highlight the certificate you want to use for authentication.
5. Click **Select and Close** and in the next dialog box click **Next**.
6. Determine which corporate domains are assigned to the server and click **Next**.



7. Enter a comment if required and click **Finish**.

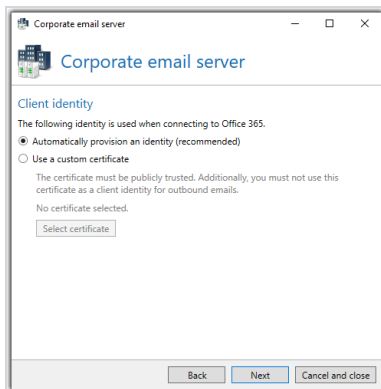
## Add as Office 365 tenant

A server is considered a corporate email server here if it is an official Office 365 server.

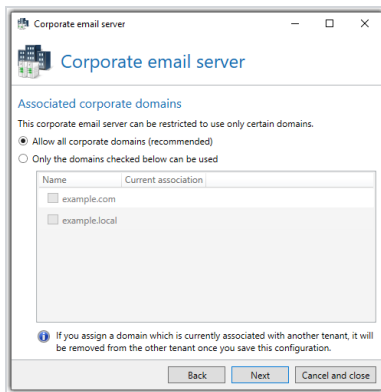


**NOTE:** If you configure Office 365 as the corporate email server, a send connector for Office 365 will be configured.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Corporate email servers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select the **As Office 365 tenant** and click **Next**.
4. Enter your tenant name and click **Next**.
5. Configure the client identity used and click **Next**.



6. Determine which company domains are assigned to the server and click **Next**



7. Enter a comment if required and click **Finish**.



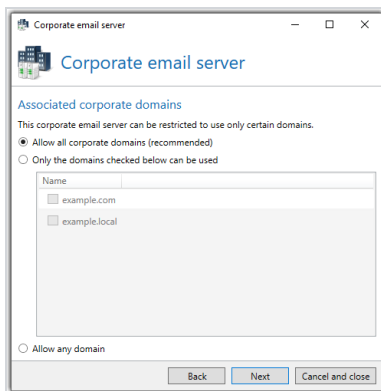
**NOTE:** By adding your Office 365 tenant, the required email routing is already created in NoSpamProxy Server. You now need to set up the message flow in Microsoft Exchange Online by running the provided PowerShell script or performing the setup manually. Highlight the entry for the Office 365 server and click **Show Exchange Configuration** to display the PowerShell script as well as further information.

## Adding via an authenticated host

A server is considered a corporate email server here if it uses a combination of user name and password for authentication.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Corporate email servers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **A host authenticated with a password** and click **Next**.
4. Specify a user name, click **Copy to clipboard** and click **Next**.

5. Determine which corporate domains are assigned to the server and click **Next**.



6. (Optional) Enter a comment.
7. Click **Finish**.

## Add via a specific sender address

Any server that uses a 'MAIL FROM' address is considered a corporate email server.



**WARNING:** The 'MAIL FROM' address can be forged very easily.  
Only use this option if you have no other way to identify the server.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Corporate email servers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **With a specific sender address** and click **Next**.
4. Click **Add**.
5. Specify the address pattern you want to use for the sender address, click

**Save and close** and click **Next**.

6. Enter a comment if required and click **Finish**.

## **|** Creating inbound connectors

Inbound emails are routed via inbound send connectors. If several connectors are suitable for routing an email, the most cost-effective one is selected.



**NOTE:** The option for direct delivery to the local email server is obsolete and is no longer available in NoSpamProxy since version 13. Delivery via queues is always applied.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Inbound send connectors**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Follow the instructions in the dialog box.  
Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
4. Click **Finish**.



## Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

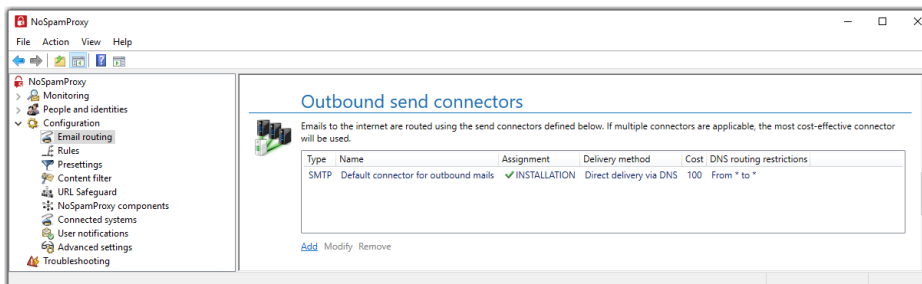
If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

## Creating outbound send connectors

Outbound send connectors are used to send emails to external servers.





### **Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles**

---

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

## **Creating an SMTP send connector**

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Outbound send connectors**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **SMTP** as type.
4. Follow the instructions in the dialog box.  
Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
5. Click **Finish**.



### Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

## Creating a De-Mail via Telekom send connector



**NOTE:** To connect to Telekom De-Mail, you must first set up a Connected systems connection for a Telekom-De-Mail connection under De-Mail-Anbieter.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Outbound send connectors**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **De-Mail via Telekom** as the type.
4. Follow the instructions in the dialog box.

Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.

5. Click **Finish**.



#### **Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles**

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

### **Creating an De-Mail via Mentana-Claimsoft GmbH send connector**



**NOTE:** In order to connect to Mentana-Claimsoft De-Mail, you must set up a **Connected systems** for the connection to Mentana-Claimsoft under **De-Mail-Anbieter**.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Outbound send connectors**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **De-Mail via Mentana-Claimsoft GmbH** as type.
4. Follow the instructions in the dialog box.  
Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
5. Click **Finish**.



#### **Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles**

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

## **Creating a Deutschland-Online - Infrastructure (DOI) send connector**

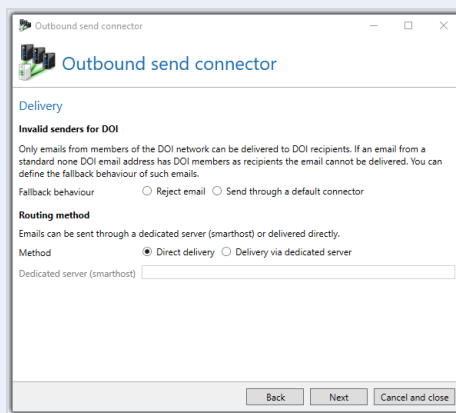
The Deutschland-Online - Infrastructure (DOI) project is used by local authorities, among others, for the secure transmission of messages.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Outbound send connectors**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **Deutschland Online - Infrastruktur (DOI)** as type.
4. Follow the instructions in the dialog box.  
Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
5. Enter the FTP or Web address from which you obtain the mailer table and click **Next**.

## 6. Configure the behaviour for invalid senders.



**NOTE:** Senders are always invalid if the sender domain is not part of the DOI network. These emails may not be delivered via the DOI network. You can choose whether these emails are returned to the sender or whether they are sent via a different connector with a higher **Shared settings for connectors** level. You can also use this page to define how emails are delivered. On the one hand, the emails can be delivered directly, on the other hand, a smarthost can be used (which we recommend). Such a smarthost is provided by the DOI network.



## 7. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** When delivered via the DOI Network, the delivered email is described in message tracking as **not encrypted**. In this case, the email is encrypted via the DOI network and is thus delivered in a tap-proof manner. This protection is not listed under transport safety.



## Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

## Creating an AS2 Business to Business send connector

Creating an **AS2 Business to Business** send connector

The AS2 connector allows you to forward EDI files to an AS2-compliant system.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Outbound send connectors**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select **AS2 Business-to-Business** as the type.
4. Follow the instructions in the dialog box.

Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.



**NOTE:** Via the routing domain you specify which emails are routed via this connector. For example, if you enter 'example' here, this connector will capture all emails sent to \*@example.as2. You can therefore configure your internal system, for example, so that the EDIFACT data is sent to as2@example.as2. The local part of the address is ignored.

5. Click **Next**.
6. Enter the AS2 parameters you received from your trading partner.
7. Click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** The connector will always request a synchronous receipt (Mail Delivery Notification). Take this into account when exchanging the configuration with your trading partner.



**NOTE:** The connector will process all emails that have exactly one EDI attachment. After the file is sent, the AS2 service delivery receipt is forwarded to the sender of the original e-mail.



**NOTE:** You will receive the service URL and, if necessary, authentication data from your trading partner.



### **Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles**

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

## **Creating receive connectors**

You can configure multiple receive connectors to receive email on different network cards, but also to implement different security requirements for email traffic. If you have a NoSpamProxy Encryption license, additional connectors for De-Mail and POP3 mailboxes are available.

## Creating an SMTP receive connector

The SMTP receive connector defines on which IP address and which port emails are received by NoSpamProxy. It also determines how invalid requests from external email servers are handled and what connection security should be applied when transporting emails.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Receive connectors** and click **Add**.
2. Select **SMTP** as type.
3. Set the Gateway Roles of the receive connector, the IP address and the port of the connector. Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
4. For an address binding to a **specific address**, specify the IP address at which the connections are to be accepted.



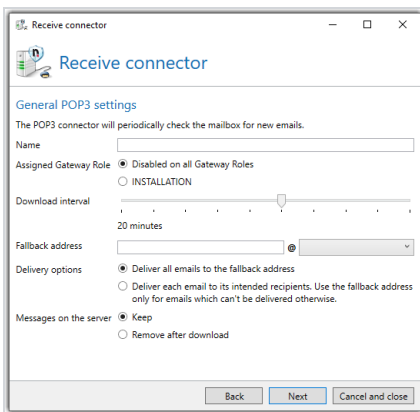
**NOTE:** If you have selected multiple Gateway Roles, you cannot perform a binding to individual IP addresses. In this case select **All** or **Loopback**.

5. For **Port**, specify the port at which NoSpamProxy should receive emails and click **Next**.
6. Make the settings for invalid requests. Please refer to the notes under **Invalid requests for SMTP receive connectors**.
7. Make the settings for connection security. Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
8. Click **Finish**.

## Creating a POP3 receive connector

With the POP3 connector, external POP3 mailboxes can be checked for new emails and retrieved by NoSpamProxy Encryption. All retrieved emails are then delivered to the configured internal address.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Receive connectors** and click **Add**.
2. Select **POP3** as type.
3. Set a name and the Gateway Roles of the receiving connector. Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.



4. Under **Download** interval, specify the intervals at which the connector should download new emails from the remote terminal.
5. Determine the delivery options under Delivery behavior.
  - **Deliver all emails to the replacement address**| All recipient data in the retrieved emails is ignored and the emails are sent to the specified address.
  - **Deliver all emails to the intended recipients. Use the substitute address only for emails that cannot otherwise be delivered**| The recipient data is extracted and the emails are forwarded to the

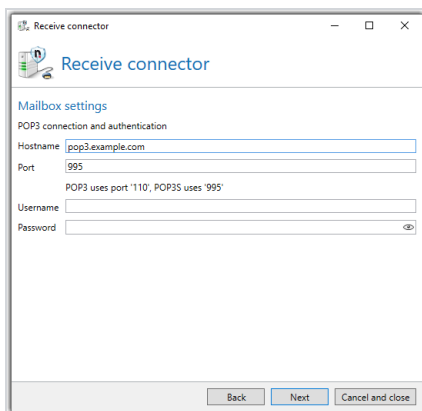
appropriate recipients. The specified address is only used for emails in which no internal email addresses are found.

6. Determine whether the emails are removed from the server after downloading.



**NOTE:** If you leave the emails on the server, they will still only be downloaded once.

7. Under Mailbox Settings, set the name, network port of the server and the user information for accessing the server.

A screenshot of the 'Receive connector' window in the Exchange Management Console. The 'Mailbox settings' tab is selected. It shows fields for 'Hostname' (pop3.example.com), 'Port' (995), 'Username', and 'Password'. A note states 'POP3 uses port 110, POP3S uses 995'. At the bottom are 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel and close' buttons.

Receive connector

Mailbox settings

POP3 connection and authentication

Hostname

Port

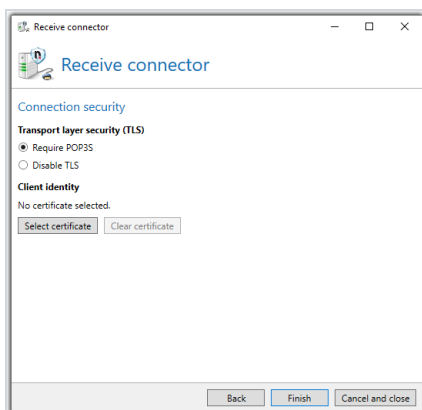
POP3 uses port 110, POP3S uses 995

Username

Password

Back Next Cancel and close

8. Make the settings for connection security. Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**

A screenshot of the 'Receive connector' window in the Exchange Management Console. The 'Connection security' tab is selected. It shows 'Transport layer security (TLS)' with 'Require POP3S' selected. Under 'Client identity', it says 'No certificate selected' with 'Select certificate' and 'Clear certificate' buttons. At the bottom are 'Back', 'Finish', and 'Cancel and close' buttons.

Receive connector

Connection security

Transport layer security (TLS)

☒ Require POP3S

☐ Disable TLS

Client identity

No certificate selected.

Select certificate Clear certificate

Back Finish Cancel and close

9. Click **Finish**.

## Creating a De-Mail via Telekom receive connector

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Receive connectors** and click **Add**.

The screenshot shows the 'Empfangskonnektor' configuration window. The title bar says 'Empfangskonnektor'. The main heading is 'Telekom De-Mail'. Below it, a note states: 'Der De-Mail-Konnektor überprüft periodisch den Dienstanbieter auf neuen De-Mails.' The 'Name' field is set to 'Telekom'. The 'Status' is set to 'Eingeschaltet' (checked) with a radio button. The 'Herunterladeintervall' (Download interval) is set to '10 Minuten' using a slider. The 'Anbieter' (Provider) is set to 'Telekom-Anbieter ( ) on GWRole01' from a dropdown menu. Below this, a note says: 'Der gewählte Anbieter ist für die folgenden Domänen zuständig.' There is a table with two columns: 'Herunterladen' (Download) and 'Domäne' (Domain). The table has two rows, both with a green checkmark in the 'Herunterladen' column and 'info@example.com' in the 'Domäne' column. At the bottom left is a 'Bearbeiten' (Edit) link. At the bottom right are two buttons: 'Speichern und schließen' (Save and close) and 'Abbrechen und schließen' (Cancel and close).

Herunterladen	Domäne
✓	info@example.com
✓	info@example.com

2. Select **De-Mail via Telekom** as the type.
3. Set a name and determine whether the connector should be switched on or off. Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**. The assignment to a Gateway Role is determined by the configured De-Mail provider. The connector always runs on the Gateway Role on which the certificate configured in the De-Mail provider is located.
4. Determine at **Download interval** how often NoSpamProxy Encryption should check the De-Mail box for new messages.
5. In the list of De-Mail domains, specify for each entry whether De-Mails of this domain are to be downloaded.

6. Set a substitute address that can be used if the original recipient of the De-Mail is no longer available in your company.
7. Click **Save and close**.

## Creating a De-Mail via Mentana-Claimsoft GmbH receive connector



**NOTE:** In order to connect to Mentana-Claimsoft De-Mail, you must set up a **Connected systems** for the connection to Mentana-Claimsoft under .

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Receive connectors** and click **Add**.
2. Select **De-Mail via Mentana-Claimsoft GmbH** as type.

The screenshot shows the 'Empfangskonnektor' configuration window. The title bar says 'Empfangskonnektor'. The main title is 'Empfangskonnektor'. Below it, there's a tab labeled 'Mentana-Claimsoft'. The description says: 'Der De-Mail-Konnektor überprüft periodisch den Dienstanbieter auf neuen De-Mails.' The 'Name' field is set to 'Mentana-Claimsoft De-Mail'. The 'Zugeordnete Gateway Rollen' section has a checkbox for 'GWR01' which is checked. The 'Herunterladeintervall' is set to '10 Sekunden'. Below this, there's a note: 'Jedes Postfach benötigt eine Rückfalladresse für den Fall, dass eine E-Mail nicht zu ihrem Empfänger zugestellt werden kann.' There is a table with two columns: 'Mailbox Name' and 'Ersatzadresse'. The table contains two rows, both with 'sammelpostfach@...' in the first column and 'demo@example.local' in the second column. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Speichern und schließen' and 'Abbrechen und schließen'.

Mailbox Name	Ersatzadresse
sammelpostfach@...	demo@example.local
sammelpostfach@...	demo@example.local

3. Set a name as well as the Gateway Roles on which the connector is to operate. Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
4. Under **Downloadinterval**, specify the intervals at which the connector should download new emails from the remote terminal.

5. In the list of mailboxes, enter a substitute address for each mailbox that can be used if the original recipient of the De-Mail is no longer available in your company.



**NOTE:** At least one De-Mail domain must be marked for download in the list and configured with a substitute address.

6. Click **Save and close**.

## Creating an AS2 Business-to-Business receive connector

The AS2 connector allows you to receive EDI files from a trading partner. The receiving data is then forwarded to email recipients.

1. Go to **Configuration > Email routing > Receive connectors** and click **Add**.
2. Select **AS2 Business-to-Business** as the type.

3. Set a name and the assigned Gateway Roles. Please refer to the notes under **Shared settings for connectors**.
4. At **Internal Recipient**, specify to whom received data is forwarded.

5. Enter both your certificate and ID and the certificate and ID of your trading partner.



**NOTE:** The connector requires both a signature and encryption.



**NOTE:** After setting up, the connector can be reached via the address `http://gatewayrolle:6060/nospamproxy/api/as2/<name>`. `<name>` is the name of the connector. You must publish this address on the Internet via your firewall.



**WARNING:** Be sure to publish only the URL `/nospamproxy/api/as2` and not the full port. Otherwise, the web services for the administration of NoSpamProxy are accessible via the Internet.

Information on how to minimise denial-of-service attacks and other vulnerabilities can be found under [\*\*Invalid requests for SMTP receive connectors\*\*](#).

## Shared settings for connectors

Some of the following settings are used in multiple connectors:

### Name

You must give each connector its own name using the Name field. The name must be unique compared to other connectors from the same area. The name helps you to distinguish different connectors. You can use it to briefly describe the function of the connector.

## Assigned Gateway Roles

Depending on the type of connector, it can be used either on multiple Gateway Roles in parallel or only on a single role. Select the Gateway Roles on which you want to operate the connector.

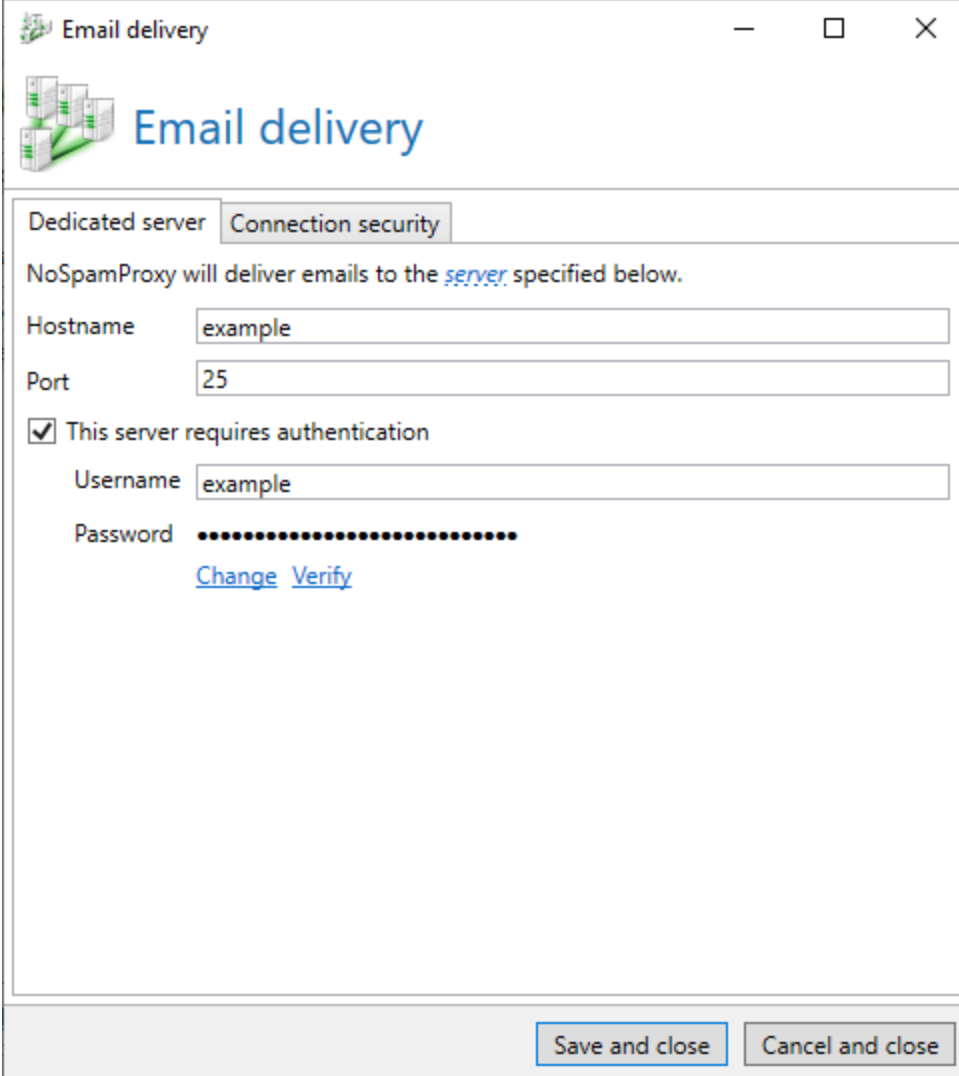
## Smarthost: Email delivery via dedicated server.

A smarthost is a dedicated server for the delivery of emails. Smarthosts are located, for example, with your Internet provider or in your own company network, if emails may only be sent via this server.

- On the **Dedicated server** page, enter the server name (recommended) or the IP address and port of the dedicated server.
- If the server requires authentication, enter the user name and password.



**TIP:** To check whether the password you have is the same as the configured password after you have finished the configuration, click **Verify**.



The image shows a window titled "Email delivery" with a standard Windows title bar (minimize, maximize, close buttons). Inside the window, there is a sub-header "Email delivery" with a small icon of three mailboxes. Below this, there are two tabs: "Dedicated server" and "Connection security". The "Connection security" tab is selected. The text "NoSpamProxy will deliver emails to the [server](#) specified below." is displayed. Below this text are two input fields: "Hostname" with the value "example" and "Port" with the value "25". Below these fields is a checkbox labeled "This server requires authentication" which is checked. Under the checkbox are two more input fields: "Username" with the value "example" and "Password" which is masked with dots. Below the password field are two links: "Change" and "Verify". At the bottom right of the window are two buttons: "Save and close" and "Cancel and close".

Email delivery

Connection security

NoSpamProxy will deliver emails to the [server](#) specified below.

Hostname

Port

☒ This server requires authentication

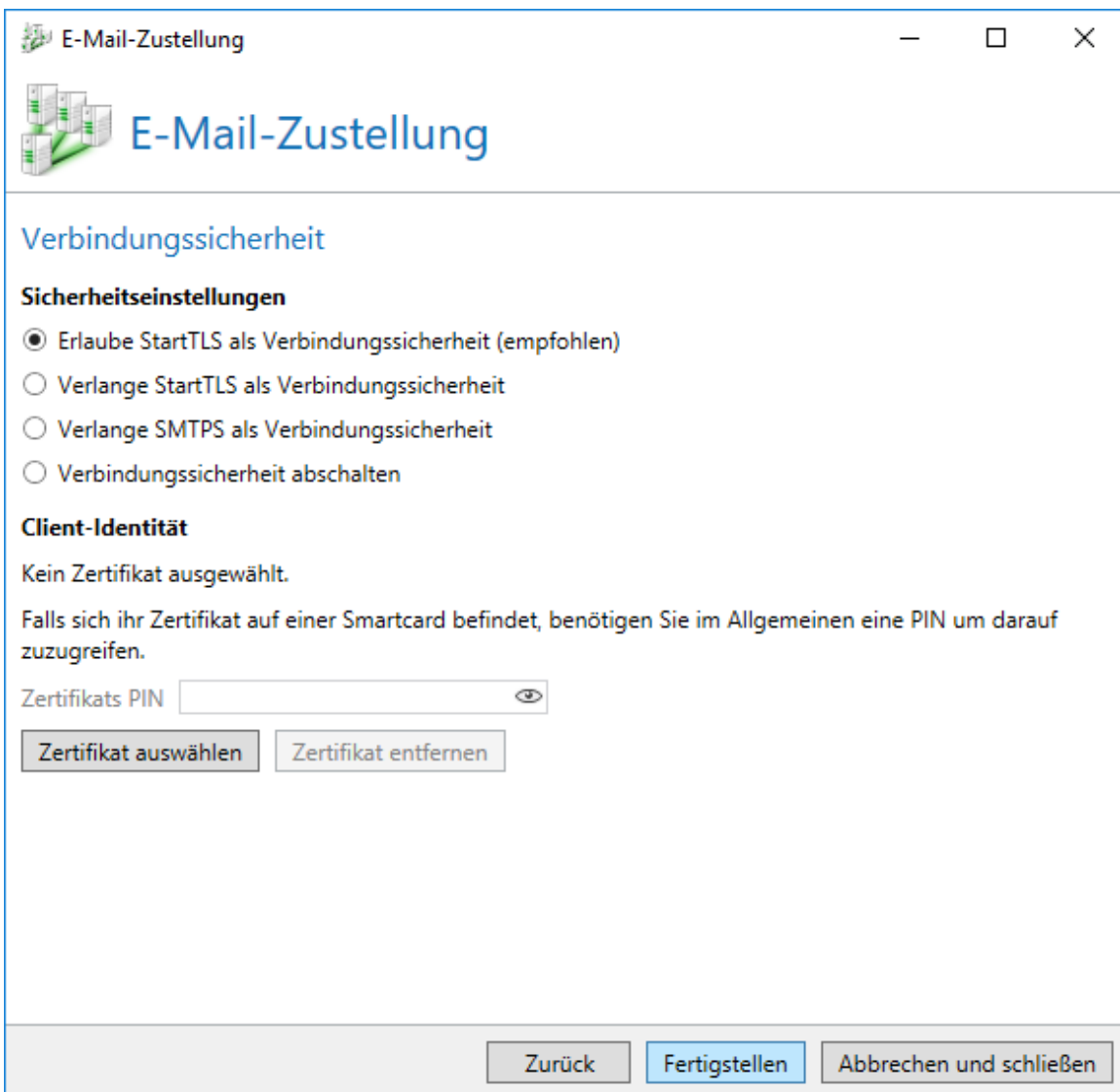
Username

Password

[Change](#) [Verify](#)

NoSpamProxy supports the **Basic** method. With this method, user name and password are transmitted unencrypted over the Internet. If your provider supports this, you should activate connection security for the connections.

You must configure the options for connection security to smarthosts as described under **Connection security**. SMTP send connectors for emails to external addresses use the certificate-based identity as **client identity**.



**E-Mail-Zustellung**

### Verbindungssicherheit

**Sicherheitseinstellungen**

- ☒ Erlaube StartTLS als Verbindungssicherheit (empfohlen)
- ☐ Verlange StartTLS als Verbindungssicherheit
- ☐ Verlange SMTPS als Verbindungssicherheit
- ☐ Verbindungssicherheit abschalten

**Client-Identität**

Kein Zertifikat ausgewählt.

Falls sich ihr Zertifikat auf einer Smartcard befindet, benötigen Sie im Allgemeinen eine PIN um darauf zuzugreifen.

Zertifikats PIN



**NOTE:** If you send emails to external addresses through another smarthost and force encryption in the trust settings for a domain, the emails will fail to be sent to that domain if the smarthost does not support encryption for the respective email. You have to make sure that the smarthost for the emails always supports StartTLS.

## Direct delivery (DNS)

Direct delivery via DNS servers will try to deliver the emails directly to your target servers. Define the necessary connection security for this connector. You can also store a specific client identity here so that NoSpamProxy can authenticate itself to other servers.

## Connection security



**NOTE:** For information on exchanging TLS certificates for connectors, see [Austauschen der TLS-Zertifikate für Konnektoren](#).

The connection security defines the encryption of the transport connection. The dialog described here is used multiple times for the different connectors. In some connectors, individual configuration options are hidden. This concerns the encryption on the transport route. This does not refer to end-to-end

encryption.

## SMTP security settings

In the **Security Settings** section, you can set the level of security for sending emails to local addresses. The following settings are available:

**Allow connection security through StartTLS (recommended)**| In this mode, encryption of connections is possible but will not be forced. The encryption of the connection via StartTLS is optional for the inbound server. A certificate in the section Server identity for receive connectors is required. Optionally, to provide proof of identity of the send connector, you can provide a certificate in the area Client identity.

**Demand connection security through StartTLS**| If you want to ensure that all connections are encrypted using the appropriate receive connector, you must select this option. Now NoSpamProxy requires an encrypted connection from the sending server via StartTLS. You must provide the Gateway with a certificate in the Server identity section.

**Use TLS as connection security**| With this setting, an SMTP connector expects a connection establishment via SMTPS. A POP3 connector expects POP3S. Only use this setting if it is absolutely necessary. The StartTLS protocol is common method for connection encryption. Usually a separate port (usually 465) is used for SMTPS, as the connection is automatically expected to be encrypted, similar to HTTPS over port 443.

**Deactivate connection security**| With this setting, connections are never encrypted. In this case, NoSpamProxy will not offer any connection security to the inbound servers.



**WARNING:** SMTPS on port 25 is not RFC compliant.

Instead, use a separate receive connector that you place on port 465.



**NOTE:** The necessary encryption level for connection with StartTLS or SMTPS is 128 bit or better. Connections with a lower encryption strength are not accepted. Furthermore, only TLS connections are allowed. SSL connections are not supported because they are no longer considered secure.

### Server or client identity

SSL certificates are required to encrypt the transport connection. The receiving email server requires a certificate as server identity to enable the encryption of the connection. The sending email client can prove its own client identity with a certificate.

**Server identity** | An SSL certificate in the receive connector is used to provide connection security. Using the certificate as server identity at the receiving email server, StartTLS or TLS encryption is enabled. Without a certificate, the encryption for connections must be deactivated.

**Client identity** | An SSL certificate in SMTP send connectors is used to secure the identity of the sending email server. Even without a certificate as client identity, the connection security through StartTLS or TLS can be used, because the certificate of the server identity of the receiving server is sufficient for the encryption of the transport connection.



**WARNING:** When adding a certificate for transport encryption by StartTLS, the Gateway Role needs read permissions for the private key. These rights for the role are granted automatically. However, you must stop and restart the Gateway Role once for this change to take effect and for the Gateway Role to be given read permissions for the private key of the certificate in use. A corresponding warning message also appears in the interface.

After selecting the certificate, you may need to enter a PIN code into the **Certificate PIN (optional)** field.



**NOTE:** Please check the entry of your PIN very carefully, as many certificates protected by a PIN code are irrevocably destroyed if entered incorrectly three times.

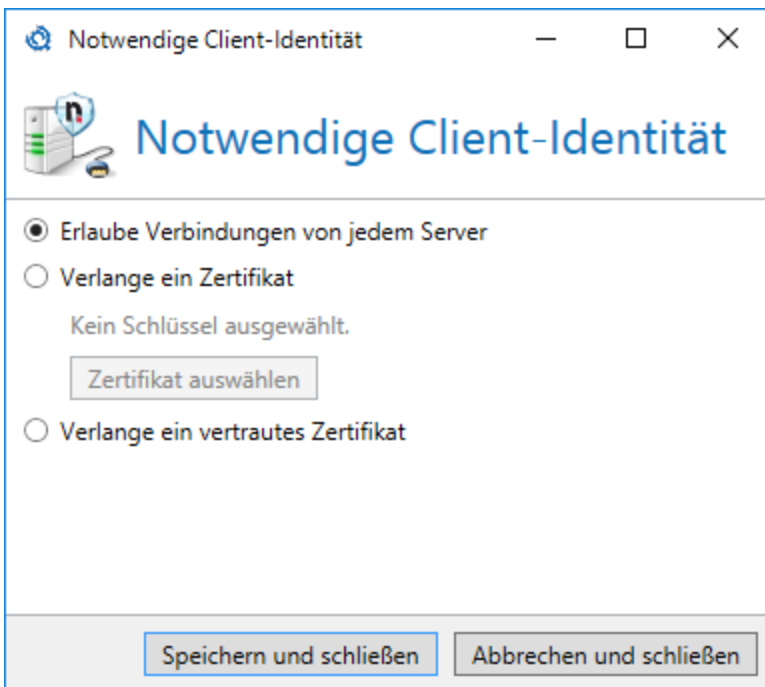
### **If you require StartTLS or SMTPS as connection security,**

If SSL is forced for connections, you can determine which clients are permitted to connect in the section Required client identity by only allowing access if the counter device authenticates with a corresponding certificate.

**Allow connections of any server**| Any server may connect.

**Require a certificate**| The certificate to be provided by the counter device depends on the certificate selected here: For intermediate or root certificates, the counter device must authenticate itself with a certificate which contains the selected certificate in the certificate chain. For end certificates, the counter device must authenticate itself with this exact certificate.

**Require a trusted certificate**| The certificate chain of the provided certificate must be resolvable via the certificates of the Windows certificate store.




## Costs


The costs are used if several send connectors can be used for the delivery of emails. In such a case, the connector with the lowest cost is used. If the email cannot be delivered via this connector, the email delivery has permanently failed. In this case no further connectors with higher costs are used.

## **DNS routing restrictions due to connector namespaces**

A send connector can be configured to deliver emails only for a subset of the available DNS namespace. If several connectors apply to one email, the connector with the lowest cost is used.

By default, a namespace of \* as sender domain and \* as recipient domain is automatically created in a new connector. This means that there is no restriction in the DNS namespace for a new connector, since the placeholder "\*" corresponds to every possible name. If the connector you have created is not to manage all domains, you must delete the default namespace and replace it with another namespace.

 Ausgehender Sendekonnektor



# Ausgehender Sendekonnektor

## DNS-Routingeinschränkungen

Dieser Konnektor wird nur genutzt falls eines der unten angegebenen Absender- und Zieldomänenmuster zutrifft. Falls kein bestimmtes Muster benötigt wird, benutzen Sie '\*' als Muster.

Sender Domänen Muster	Ziel Domänen Muster
*	*

[Hinzufügen](#) [Bearbeiten](#) [Entfernen](#)


Zurück

Fertigstellen

Abbrechen und schließen

A connector namespace consists of a pattern for both the **sender domain** and the **target domain**. This pattern may also contain placeholders (\* and ?).

Konnektor Namensraum



## Konnektor Namensraum

Bitte geben Sie das Sender und Ziel Domänen Muster an (nutzen Sie "\*" und "?" als Platzhalter). Der Konnektor wird nur dann genutzt wenn sowohl Sender als auch Ziel Domänen Muster den unten angegebenen Mustern entsprechen.

Sender Domänen Muster

Ziel Domänen Muster

Speichern und schließen
Abbrechen und schließen

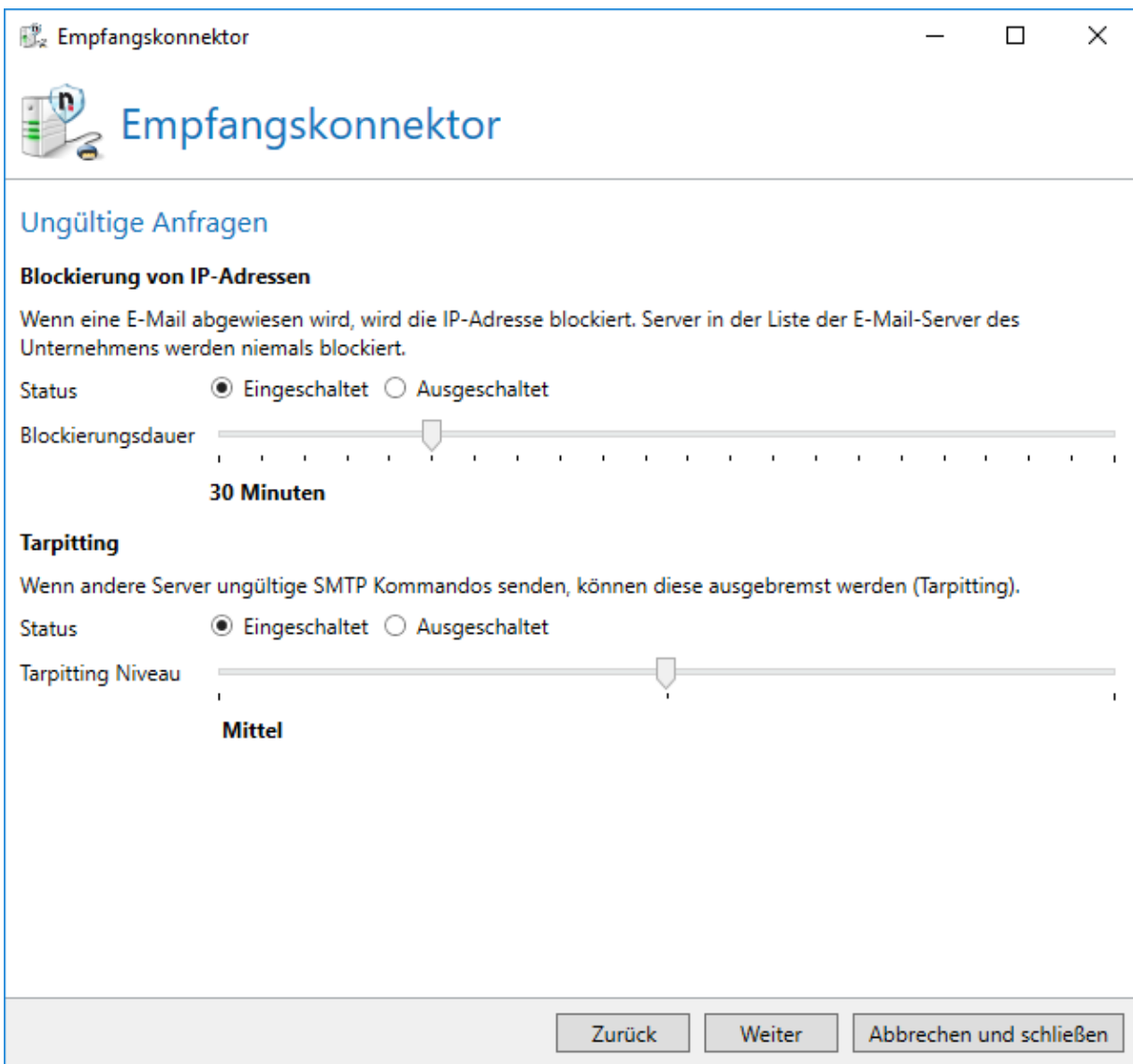
**EXAMPLE:** To create a send connector for external addresses that only sends emails from the domain "example.com" to the domain "netatwork.de", the following settings must be made.

Sender domain pattern	Target domain pattern
example.com	netatwork.com

## I Invalid requests for SMTP receive connectors

Some participants on the Internet try to overload other email servers by sending invalid requests (so-called denial-of-service attacks) or exploit security holes to break into servers. In order to minimize these attacks, you can specifically slow down such requests, for example by using the so-called **tarpitting**.

## Settings for invalid requests when configuring SMTP receive connectors



**Empfangskonnektor**

### Ungültige Anfragen

**Blockierung von IP-Adressen**

Wenn eine E-Mail abgewiesen wird, wird die IP-Adresse blockiert. Server in der Liste der E-Mail-Server des Unternehmens werden niemals blockiert.

Status ☒ Eingeschaltet ☐ Ausgeschaltet

Blockierungsdauer  30 Minuten

**Tarpitting**

Wenn andere Server ungültige SMTP Kommandos senden, können diese ausgebremst werden (Tarpitting).

Status ☒ Eingeschaltet ☐ Ausgeschaltet

Tarpitting Niveau  Mittel

Zurück Weiter Abbrechen und schließen

**Blocking of IP addresses** | The blocking serves to specifically slow down servers that have already been identified as spam senders. If a server sends an email to your NoSpamProxy and it is classified as spam, subsequent emails from the same sending server will be blocked for the specified time period.

A regular email sender will make a new attempt to deliver the email after this period.

A spammer is likely to abort delivery and focus on unprotected email recipients. Use the Blocking for suspicious IP addresses radio button to set or turn off the option to block suspicious IP addresses. With the slider for the Blocking period you can set the duration of the blocking from 5 minutes to one day (1440 minutes).

**Tarpitting** Tarpitting is a method of slowing down email relays that do not adhere to the RFC when it comes to SMTP command sets and/or their correct order. As soon as an SMTP command is transmitted incorrectly or in the wrong place, NoSpamProxy waits five seconds with its response for every other command. The transmission of commands is thus artificially made more difficult, as if you were taking a path through a tar pit - hence the name tarpitting.

With the slider for the tarpitting level you can set by how many seconds NoSpamProxy Protection delays the response. If you set the slider to **Low**, the gateway will wait 2 seconds. **Medium** results in a 5 second delay and **High** results in a 10 second delay.

## Queued delivery



**NOTE:** The option for direct delivery to the local email server is obsolete and is no longer available in NoSpamProxy since version 13. Delivery via queues is always applied.

NoSpamProxy first places the email in a queue after receipt and only then forwards the email to the configured smarthost(s). For the successful receipt of the email it is not relevant whether the next smarthost is available or not.



**NOTE:** If you select the queued delivery mode for the send connector, any existing configuration is replaced by the newly configured queued delivery mode. When you switch to queued delivery mode, the first SMTP connector is immediately configured.



**NOTE:** If you added to the local servers under **Adding corporate email servers**, an Office 365 connector will be displayed here. This connector is responsible for delivering local emails to Office 365. Apart from being bound to certain gateway roles, you cannot modify or delete this connector.

## Settings

**General settings** | Enter a name and select one or more Gateway Roles. Subsequently, determine the cost of the connector.

**SMTP connections** | You can configure multiple smarthosts under SMTP connections. An attempt will be made to deliver the email to one of the configured smarthosts in turn. The sequence is neither configurable nor can it be influenced by the user. As soon as a smarthost receives the email, the email has been successfully delivered.

**Configuring the smarthost** | The configuration of a smarthost for local delivery proceeds as described in the chapter Smarthost: Email Delivery via Dedicated Server. The send connector for local addresses uses a client identity for connection security.

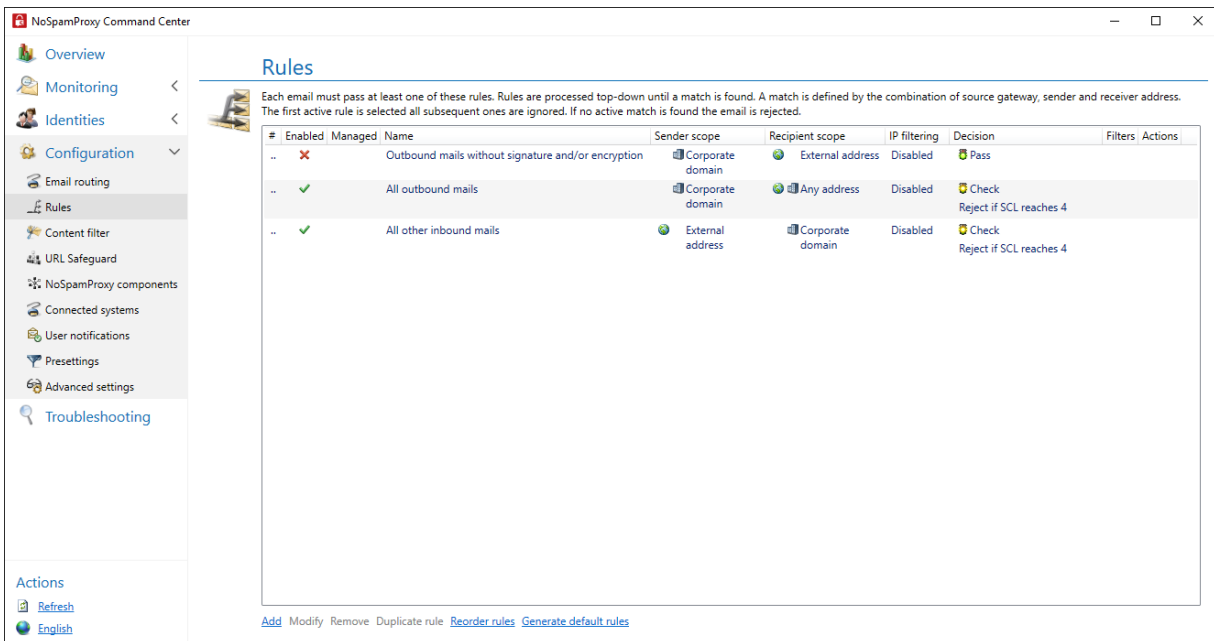
**DNS routing restrictions**| You define the restrictions for the namespace managed by the connector under DNS routing restrictions. The configuration of the restrictions for local delivery is done as described under **Shared settings for connectors**.

## **I** Setting up header-based routing

You can set up header-based routing in NoSpamProxy. With this, routing is not based on IP addresses or domains, but on entries in the header of emails.

To set up header based routing, please contact our **Support**.

# Creating rules



The screenshot shows the NoSpamProxy Command Center interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities, Configuration (expanded), Email routing, Rules (selected), Content filter, URL Safeguard, NoSpamProxy components, Connected systems, User notifications, Presettings, Advanced settings, and Troubleshooting. Below the sidebar are links for Actions, Refresh, and English. The main panel is titled 'Rules' and contains a descriptive paragraph: 'Each email must pass at least one of these rules. Rules are processed top-down until a match is found. A match is defined by the combination of source gateway, sender and receiver address. The first active rule is selected all subsequent ones are ignored. If no active match is found the email is rejected.' Below this is a table with columns: #, Enabled, Managed, Name, Sender scope, Recipient scope, IP filtering, Decision, Filters, and Actions. The table lists three rules. At the bottom of the main panel are links: Add, Modify, Remove, Duplicate rule, Reorder rules, and Generate default rules.

#	Enabled	Managed	Name	Sender scope	Recipient scope	IP filtering	Decision	Filters	Actions
1	✗		Outbound mails without signature and/or encryption	Corporate domain	External address	Disabled	Pass		
2	✓		All outbound mails	Corporate domain	Any address	Disabled	Check	Reject if SCL reaches 4	
3	✓		All other inbound mails	External address	Corporate domain	Disabled	Check	Reject if SCL reaches 4	

## General Information

### About rules

NoSpamProxy applies rules that you can configure individually when processing emails. These rules are modular in structure. You can create your own rules and modify existing rules by selecting the desired filters from the available filters for each individual rule. Within each rule you can weight and configure them as you wish using a multiplier.

You can also specify that rules apply only to certain IP addresses or recipients, for example, only to senders with a certain TLD (Top Level Domain) or to IP addresses from a certain subnet.



**TIP:** After reinstalling NoSpamProxy, a set of **Related topics** can be created after installing the licence. These enable the gateway to start functioning as quickly as possible with minimal administration effort. Nevertheless, you should check these rules and adapt them to your needs if necessary.

## Rules and their order

If a rule is responsible for an email to be checked, it will be used. If more than one rule applies to an email, the rule that is highest in the list is applied.

## Rules, filters and actions

- To process emails, NoSpamProxy applies rules that you can configure individually. For each email, the individual filters of the applicable rule are executed.
- Filters evaluate how strongly the email meets a certain filter criterion and award corresponding penalty and bonus points. The awarded points are weighted with the multiplier of the filters and then added to a total value. If this value exceeds the set **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)** of the rule, the email will be rejected. You can set the allowed SCL individually for each rule. See **Step 4: Configuring filters** and **Filters in NoSpamProxy**.
- **Actions in NoSpamProxy** are called up after the filters have determined whether the email is rejected or allowed to pass. Actions can, among other things, modify the emails, for example to add a footer or remove unwanted attachments. However, actions can also reject emails that would actually happen after they have been evaluated by the filters. This means that a virus scanner, for example, can still reject the email even though it has not been

detected as spam. Actions are therefore higher-level settings with which filters can be overridden if necessary. To find out which actions are available and how they work exactly, see [Actions available in NoSpamProxy](#).

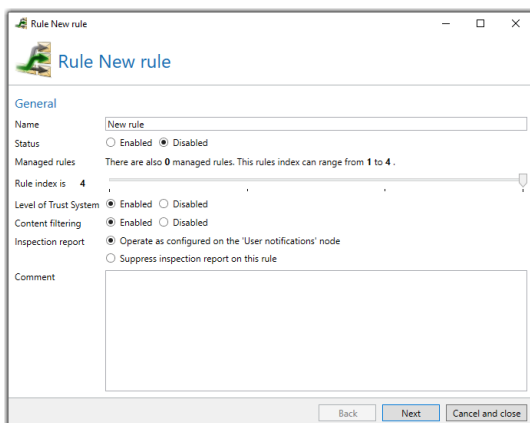
## When are emails considered spam?

In the rules you configure various filters and actions. Filters evaluate emails and thereby influence the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)** of the emails. The SCL determines whether emails are rejected if the inspection result exceeds a certain SCL.

# Steps in creating rules

## Step 1: Configuring general settings for rules

To create a new rule, go to **Configuration > Rules > Rules** and click **Add**. First, set the basic properties for the respective rule.



**Name**| Enter a unique name for the rule.

**Status**| Enable or disable the rule.

**Rule index**| Specify the position within the list of rules.

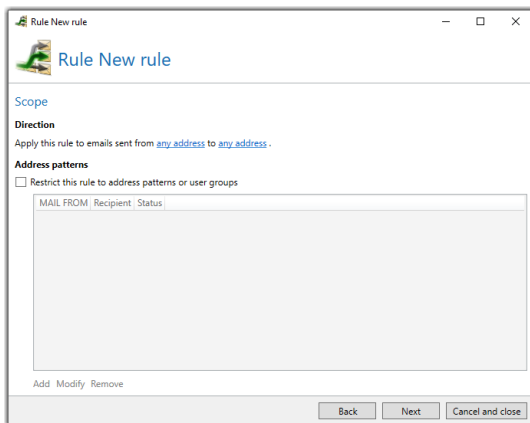
**Level of Trust**| Turn Level of Trust on or off. See [Level of Trust](#).

**Content filtering**| Enable or disable the content filter for this rule. See [Content filters](#).

**Inspection report**| Suppress the creation of an inspection report for the respective rule if required. See [Inspection report](#).

**Comment**| Enter a comment if required.

## Step 2: Configuring the scope of rules



**Direction**| Select for which sender and recipient the rule should apply.

**Address pattern**| Restrict the rule to certain address patterns or user groups.



**NOTE:** Verwenden Sie hierbei die MAIL-FROM-Domäne oder Teile von ihr.



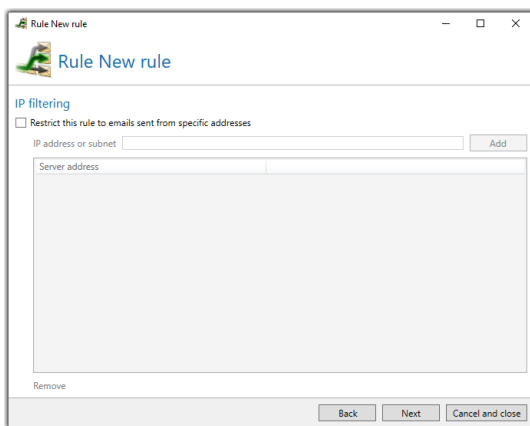
**NOTE:** The maximum number of configurable address patterns is 256.



**NOTE:** To get groups from a user directory, you must configure an automatic user import of LDAP or Active Directory users. Groups are available after the first synchronization has been performed. See [Automating the user import](#).

### Step 3: Configuring IP filtering for rules

Here you can restrict the rule to certain submitting servers.



1. Tick the check box for **Restrict this rule to emails sent from specific addresses**.
2. Specify an IP address or subnet
3. Click **Add**.



**NOTE:** The maximum number of configurable address patterns is 256.

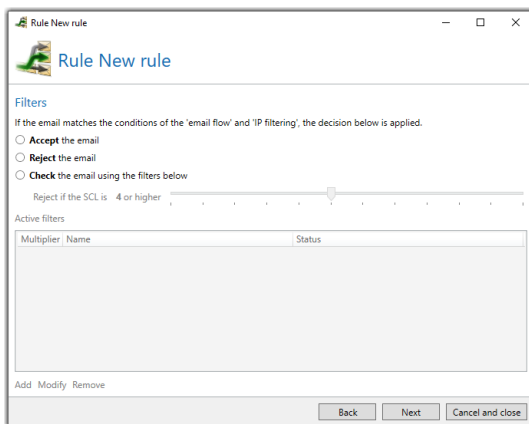
## Next steps

If you are in the process of creating a new rule, select the filters now. See [Step 4: Configuring filters](#).

### Step 4: Configuring filters

Filters evaluate emails and thus influence the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)** of the emails. The SCL determines whether emails are rejected if the inspection result exceeds a certain SCL.

Here you activate the desired filters for a rule. You can weight the filters with multipliers to increase or decrease their effect.



#### 1. Define the basic behavior of the filters.

- **Accept**| All emails processed by this rule are accepted.
- **Reject**| All emails processed by this rule are rejected.
- **Check**| All emails processed by this rule are processed by the active filters.



**NOTE:** If you select **Check**, the Spam Confidence Level (SCL) of every email is checked. If the set value is reached, the email is considered spam and rejected.

2. (Optional) Click **Add**.
3. Add one or more filters by
  - double-clicking them or
  - selecting them and clicking **Select and close**.
4. (Optional) Use the slider to set **multipliers** for the active filters.

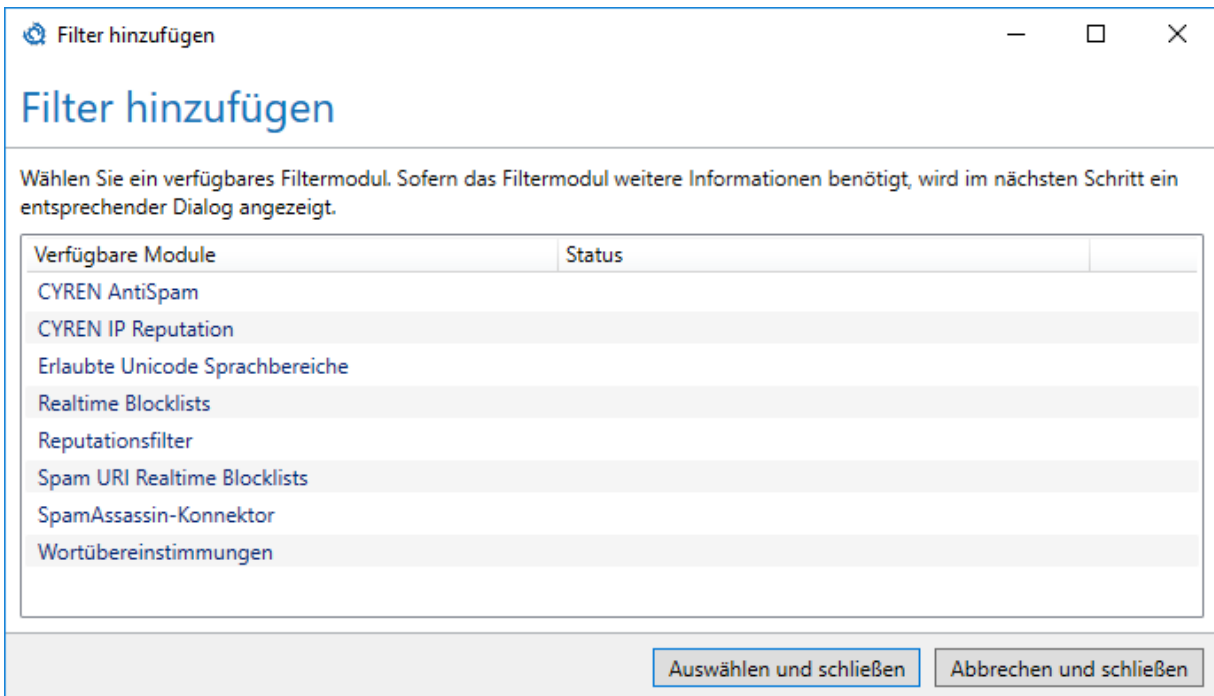


**NOTE:** The multiplier 5, for example, means that the filter is weighted five times more than a filter with the multiplier 1.

5. Click **Next**.



**NOTE:** Adding a filter to a rule based on direction is prevented if it does not show any function for that direction. This restriction does not always represent the recommended use. This means that filters that are intended for a certain direction but also work in the opposite direction can thus be configured for both directions. In some cases, the recommended direction is part of the name of the action.



## Step 5: Configuring actions

Here you select the actions that are triggered depending on the filter result.

## Configuring the actions

---

1. Click **Add**.
2. Add the desired action to the rule by
  - double-clicking the respective action or
  - selecting them and clicking **Select and close**.



**NOTE:** Depending on the selected action you may have to further configure it. For details on the configuration options of each action, see the corresponding information. See [\*\*Actions available in NoSpamProxy\*\*](#).

3. Click **Next**.



**NOTE:** Some actions cannot be applied to the sender that is usually selected. In the Status column, the text **Only local (or external) senders are supported** is displayed. A rule containing invalid actions will not be saved.



**NOTE:** Adding an action to a rule based on the sender is only prevented if the rule would not have an effect when used in this direction. This restriction does not always represent the recommended use. This means that actions that are intended for a certain direction but also work in the opposite direction can be configured for both directions. In some cases, the recommended direction is part of the name of the action.

## Step 6: Configuring rejection behavior

Here you configure how emails are treated that are rejected for reasons other than being suspected to be spam or malware.

The following basic options are available:

**Reject and send a non-delivery report (NDR) for inbound emails. Discard and send NDR for outbound emails.** | The receiving server refuses acceptance (SMTP message 5xx). As a result, the delivering server must generate a non-delivery report (NDR).

**Discard and send NDR for outbound emails.** | NoSpamProxy receives the email and sends a positive receipt to the sending server (SMTP message 200). The email is deleted immediately after acceptance; NoSpamProxy generates a non-delivery report and sends this to the delivering server.

**Reject and send NDR for all emails.** | NoSpamProxy rejects the email, generates a non-delivery report and sends it to the delivering server.

**Reject all emails without sending NDR.** | NoSpamProxy refuses to receive the email. The submitting server must generate a non-delivery report (NDR).

### Changing the rule index

---

1. Open the rule.
2. Under **Rule index**, set the new position of the rule.
3. Click **Save and close**.

## Related topics

### Default rules

Default rules make it possible to put NoSpamProxy into operation as quickly as possible and with minimal administrative effort. The configuration of the default rules is based on many years of operating numerous NoSpamProxy installations and represents a basic best-practice configuration.



**NOTE:** Nevertheless, you should check these rules and adapt them to your needs if necessary.

### Creating default rules

You have two options for creating default rules:

- via the configuration wizard or
- under **Configuration > Rules > Rules**.

### How NoSpamProxy Protection classifies emails as spam

In the rules you configure various filters and actions. Filters evaluate emails and thereby influence the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)** of the emails. The SCL determines whether the email is rejected if the inspection result exceeds a certain SCL. See **Rules**, **Filters in NoSpamProxy** and **Actions in NoSpamProxy**.

- The higher the SCL, the higher the probability that the email is spam.
- The lower the SCL, the lower the probability that the email is spam.

- An SCL of 0 indicates that the email has been classified as neutral.
- The value range for the SCL extends from -10 and +10 points.

You can weight the filters differently within the rules using the multiplier. The weighting of the filter is calculated with the multiplier. This allows you to influence the influence of the individual filters within a rule. If this total weighting reaches the threshold value of the rule, the email is treated as spam and rejected.



**TIP:** The modular structure of the rules offers numerous possibilities for individual adaptation. In addition, the filter weighting with multipliers is crucial. For details on how the SCL is calculated, see [Spam Confidence Level \(SCL\)](#).

**EXAMPLE:**

You have created a rule with one active filter: the word filter. Also, **Level of Trust** is enabled for this rule. The word filter checks an email for unwanted expressions. Let us assume that an email contains a large number of unwanted expressions. The word filter will therefore sound the alarm on this email and deliver a high penalty value, for example 6. If the word filter were the only filter in this rule, the email would now have a total value of 6. For example, if you usually set the threshold value to 4, the email would now be blocked and rejected. The sender would receive a non-delivery report.

Keep in mind that Level of Trust is still activated in this rule. The email comes from a very reliable email partner with whom you have exchanged many emails. Level of Trust assigns -4 SCL points to this email.

The Level of Trust system always has a multiplier; this multiplier is composed of

- the sum of the multipliers of all filters activated on the rule and
- the value 1, which is added to this sum.

This results in a factor of 2 in our example. The SCL value is therefore  $6 + 2 \times -4$ . This results in an SCL of -2. The email would pass through NoSpamProxy Protection.

# Creating a content filter

## Creating content filters



This feature is available if you have purchased a corresponding licence.

Each **Content filters** consists of general configurations, conditions and the content filter actions to be performed. See [Creating content filter actions](#).



**NOTE:** You must first configure the content filter actions which can then be used in multiple content filter entries.

### Step 1: Configuring attachment handling and archive handling

1. Go to **Configuration > Content filter > Content filters** and click **Add**.
2. Assign a unique name for the content filter.
3. (Optional) Set the maximum size for emails by ticking the check box and using the slider.



**NOTE:** Emails whose size exceeds the maximum allowed size are rejected.

4. (Optional) Specify the email size above which the attachments are moved to the Web Portal.

5. Specify the nesting depth from which emails are rejected.
6. Click **Next**.



**NOTE:**

NoSpamProxy supports Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR) for the following archive formats:

- ZIP
- RAR
- TAR
- 7ZIP
- BZIP, also in combination with TAR
- BZIP2, also in combination with TAR
- GZIP, also in combination with TAR
- LZIP, also in combination with TAR
- XZ, also in combination with TAR

The PDF document generated by CDR contains a link pointing to the original document in the Web Portal. The CDR-capable formats are listed in the content filter action on the **Content Disarm** tab.

**WARNING:**

The first CDR-capable attachment from an archive is converted into a PDF document and attached to the email. The remaining files remain in the archive and are uploaded to the Web Portal, if configured.

If you have selected the option **Discard the original document**, the archive is discarded. The storage location of the original document can be configured in the content filter action.

## Step 2: Creating content filter entries

1. Under **Content filter entries**, click **Add**.
2. Assign a unique name for the content filter entry.
3. Under Condition, click **Add**.
4. Configure the condition that must be met to trigger content filtering actions and click **Save and close**.



**NOTE:** Details on the configuration options can be found under **Defining conditions**.

5. Under **Actions**, select the content filter actions that are triggered based on the conditions.
6. Click **Save and close**.

The content filter entry appears in the list of content filter entries. The entries are processed from top to bottom and can be re-sorted with the arrows on the left side of the list.



Why do I need to configure an action for outbound emails?

NoSpamProxy requires a marking as *trustworthy* by Level of Trust in order to apply the action for trusted emails. Since only trust points are built up by outbound emails, this marking is missing, so that outbound emails are regarded as untrustworthy.

### Step 3: Assigning content filters

To apply a content filter, you must assign it under Partners or Corporate users.

#### Under Partner

- in the default partner settings
  1. Go to **Identities > Partners > Default partner settings**.
  2. Click **Modify**.
  3. Switch to the **ContentFilter** tab.
- in a domain entry of a partner
  1. Go to **Identities > Partners**.
  2. Under **Content filtering**, click **Modify**.
- in a partner email address
  1. Go to **Identities > Partners**.
  2. Open the domain entry of a partner and switch to the **User entries** tab.
  3. Open the corresponding user entry and switch to the **Content filtering** tab.

## Under Corporate users

- in the default settings for users
  1. Go to **Identities > Corporate Users > Default user settings**.
  2. Click **Modify**.
- in the user entries
  1. Go to **Identities > Corporate users > Corporate users**.
  2. Open the corresponding user.
  3. Switch to the **Content filtering** tab.



**NOTE:** Settings on email addresses take precedence over settings on domains, and settings on domains take precedence over the default partner settings.

## Activate or deactivate content filtering rule-based

To enable or disable content filtering for individual rules, proceed as follows:

1. Do one of the following:
  - Open an existing rule.
  - Create a new rule by clicking **Add** under **Configuration > Rules > Rules**.
2. Turn content filtering on or off under **Content** filtering.
3. Close the rule or configure it as desired.

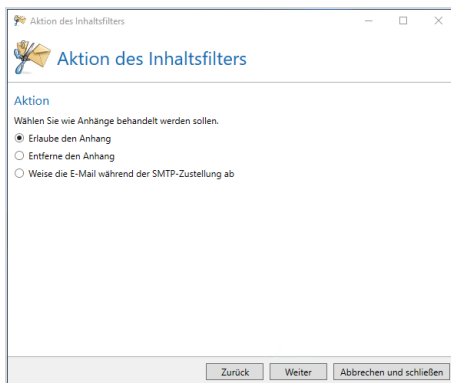
## **|** See

### Content filters

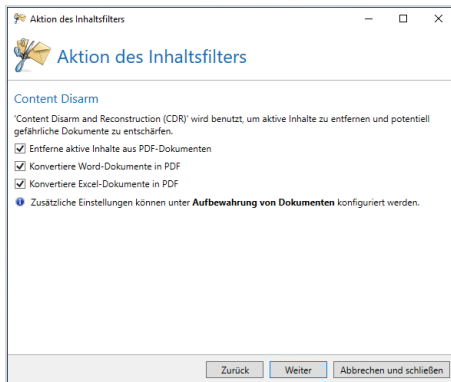
## ■ Creating content filter actions

Content filter actions are actions that are applied to attachments and the emails they contain. They are triggered if **Defining conditions** are met. Both the content filter actions and the conditions are configured in content filter entries that are part of the **Content filters**. A content filter can contain several content filter entries.

1. Go to **Configuration > Content filter > Content filter actions** and click **Add**.
2. Assign a name for the content filter action, select **SMTP emails** as the type and click **Next**.
3. Under **Action**, select the basic behaviour for attachments (Allow attachment/Remove attachment/Reject email).



4. Under **Attachments**, determine whether you want to upload the file to the Web Portal.



5. Determine whether you want to use the NoSpamProxy sandbox service. For further information, see [\*\*Aktivieren des NoSpamProxy Sandbox-Service.\*\*](#)



**NOTE:** This option is only available if you have selected either **Remove attachment** or **Reject email** under **Action**.

6. Determine whether you want to require a password for outbound **Large Files** links or let the user decide, and click Next.
7. Under **Content Disarm**, determine if and how you want to apply **Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR)** and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** Details on the configuration options can be found under [\*\*Notes on Content Disarm and Reconstruction \(CDR\).\*\*](#)

- Under **Document retention**, specify how original documents are treated if attachments have been mitigated by CDR and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** This option is only available if you have enabled **CDR** under **Content Disarm**.

- Under **File locking**, specify how files that are located on the Web Portal are treated and click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** This option is only available if you have configured the use of the Web Portal under **Attachments**.



**NOTE:** For more options, see **Document retention**.

- Go to **Configuration > Content filter > Content filter actions** and click **Add**.

2. Assign a name for the content filter action, select **Web Portal emails** as the type and click **Next**.
3. Under **Action**, select the basic behaviour for attachments (Allow attachment/Deny attachment).
4. Determine whether you want to keep attachments on the Web Portal and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** This option is only available if you have selected **Allow attachment**.

5. Under **Content Disarm**, determine if and how you want to use **Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR)** and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** Details on the configuration options can be found under **Notes on Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR)**.

6. Under **Document retention**, specify how original documents are treated if attachments have been mitigated by CDR and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** This option is only available if you have enabled **CDR** under **Content Disarm**.

7. Under **File locking**, specify how files that are located on the Web Portal are treated and click **Finish**.



**NOTE:** This option is only available if you have configured the use of the Web Portal under **Action**.



**NOTE:** For more options, see **Documentretention**.

## I Defining conditions

Each content filter consists of one or more content filter entries. For each of these entries, you define one or more conditions regarding

- file types,
- file names and
- file sizes,

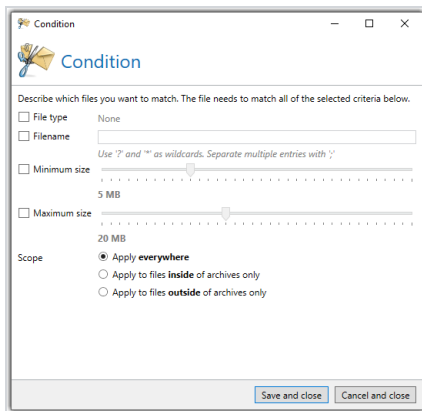
that you want to filter out.

In the conditions you also determine whether the respective content filter entry for files will be applied to files

- inside of archives,
- outside of archives or
- to

both.

1. In a content filter, open a content filter entry.
2. Under **Condition**, click **Add**.



3. Configure the options regarding type, name, size and scope.
4. Click **Save and close**.

## **|** Example configurations of the content filter

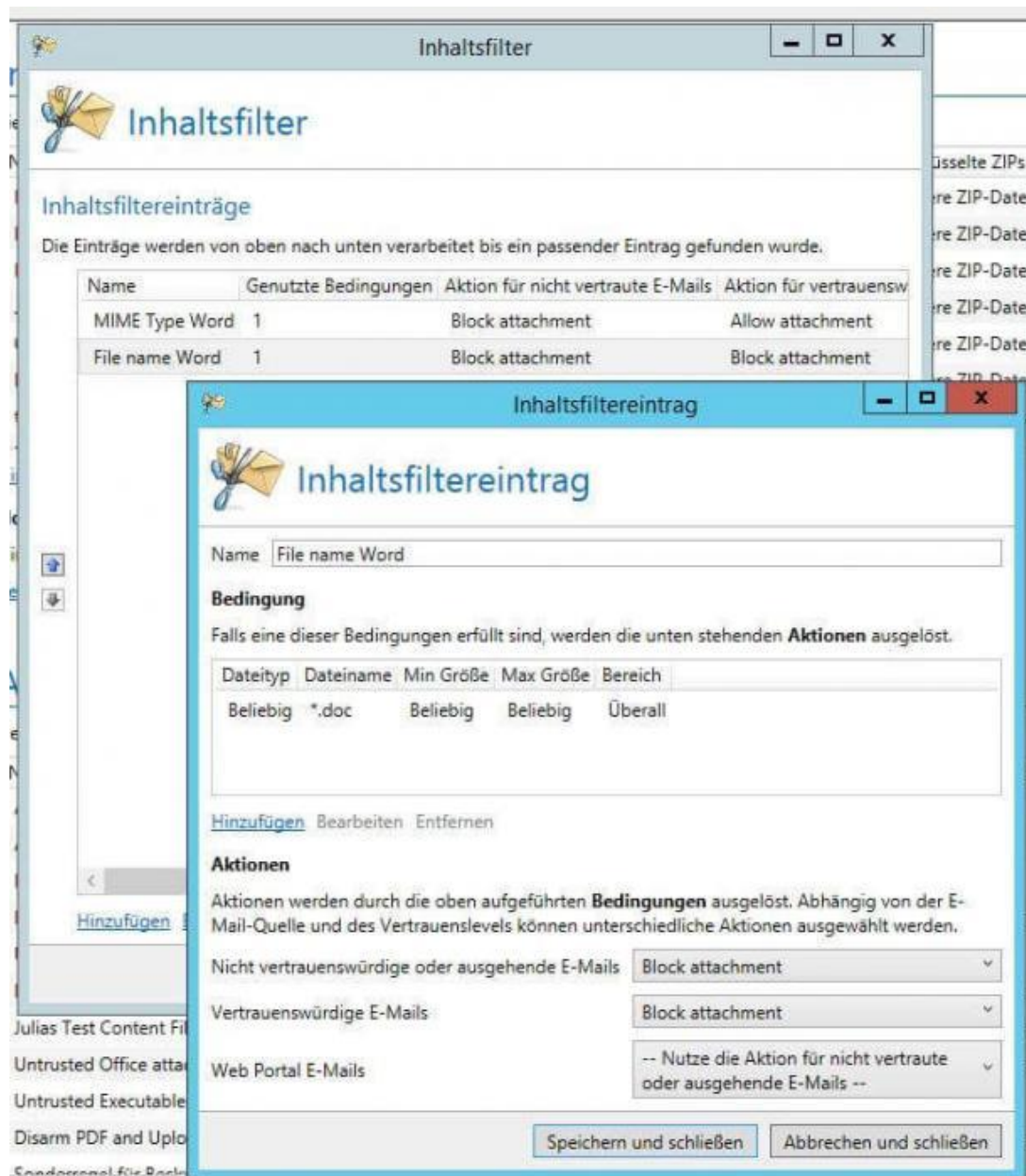
In this article we would like to discuss the procedure for content filter configuration. The combinations of the content filter entries are crucial here.

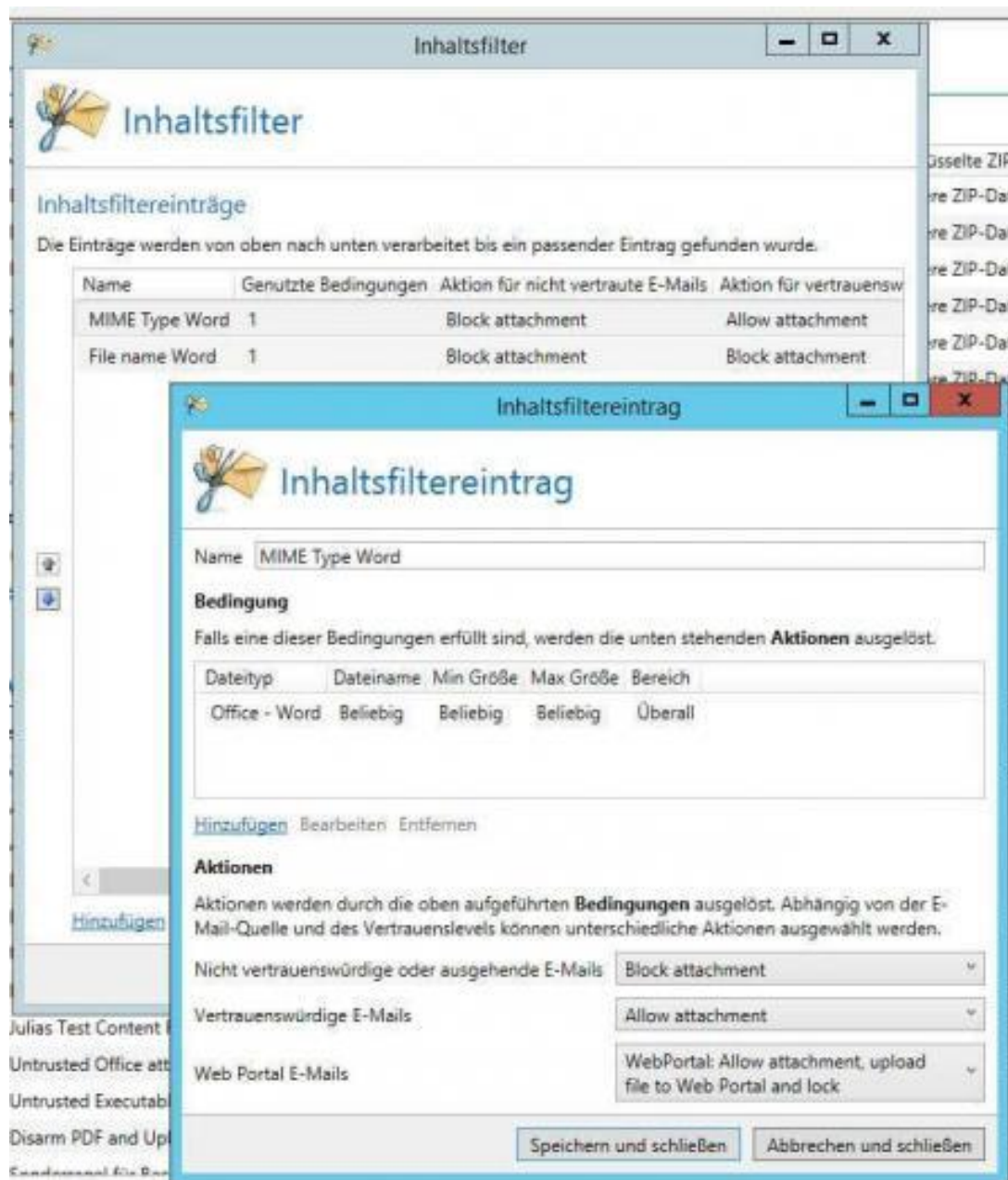
### **Configuration option 1**

You can define multiple content filter entries within a content filter. These content filter entries are OR-linked. These entries are processed one after the other from top to bottom and as soon as the first entry takes effect, the following entries are no longer considered.

**EXAMPLE:**

One content filter entry for file type "Office - Word" and one content filter entry for file name "\*.doc".





In this case, the file type is checked first and if this entry is skipped because the file type does not match, all files that have an Office Word file extension are rejected by the next entry. Thus, no renamed file with an Office Word extension can be delivered.

## Configuration option 2

You can define several conditions within a filter entry. These conditions are AND-linked. So both conditions must apply to a file in order to be processed by the content filter entry

### EXAMPLE:

Content filter entry on file type "Office - Word" **and** file name "\*.doc".

Condition

Describe which files you want to match. The file needs to match all of the selected criteria below.

☒ File type Office - Word

☒ Filename \*.doc

☐ Minimum size 5 MB

☐ Maximum size 20 MB

Scope

☒ Apply everywhere

☐ Apply to files **inside** of archives only

☐ Apply to files **outside** of archives only

Save and close Cancel and close

In this case, this entry will only take effect if the file has an Office Word file type and also ends in ".doc". Otherwise, this entry is skipped and the attachment may not be processed correctly.

## How to block potentially harmful file attachments

While most malicious attachments are reliably detected by the Integrated Malware Scanner, it occasionally happens that new malware remains undetected. With the help of NoSpamProxy it is possible,

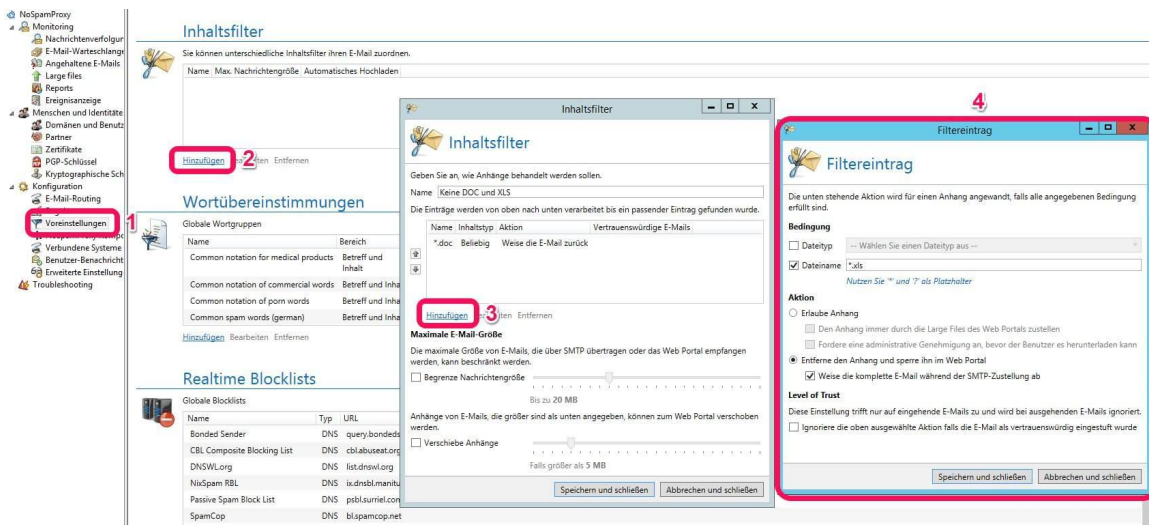
- to block potentially harmful attachments in general,
- to allow only senders considered trustworthy by Level of Trust, or
- to quarantine attachments.



**NOTE:** Please note that the quarantine functionality requires a working Web Portal and Large Files license.

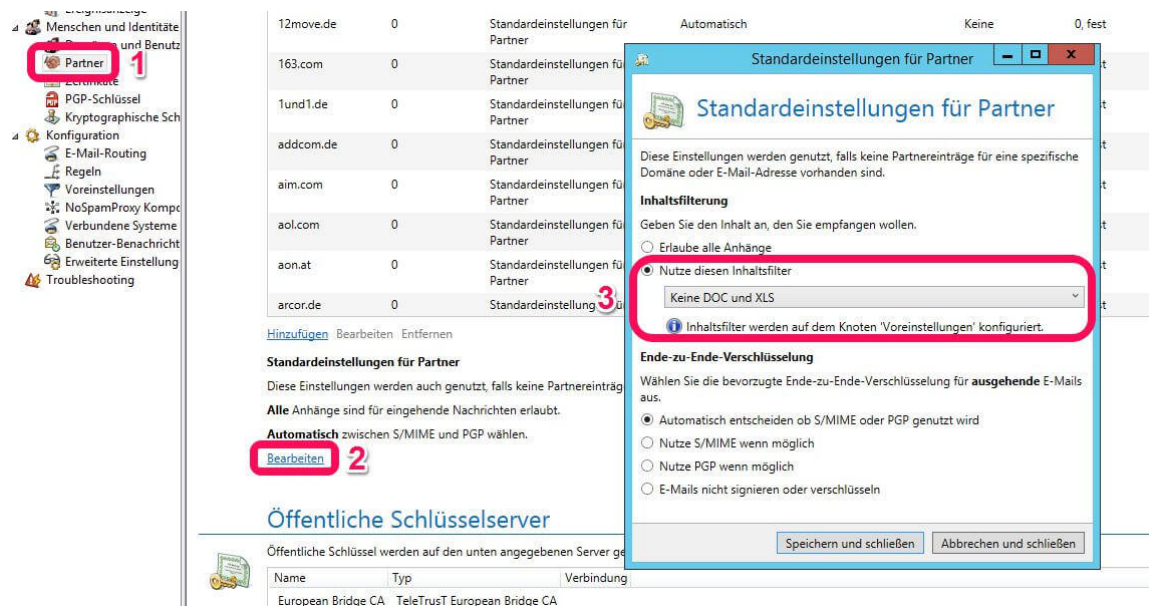
### Creating a content filter to block, filter or quarantine attachments

1. Go to **Configuration > Content filter > Content filters**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the Content filter entries dialog, click **Add**.
4. Configure the entry according to your requirements.
5. Click **Save and close**.
6. (Optional) Repeat steps 3, 4 and 5 for all other file types.



## Activating the content filter for incoming emails

1. Go to **People and Identities > Partners > Default partner settings**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Select the new filter under **Content filtering**.
4. Click **Save and close**.



## Setting up individual content filtering for specific senders

1. Go to **People and identities > Partners > Partners**.
2. Double-click the domain.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Set up content filters for a domain
    1. Under **Content filtering**, click **Modify**.
    2. Select the desired filter.
  - Set up content filter for a user entry
    1. Switch to the **User entries** tab.
    2. Double-click the desired user.
    3. Select the desired filter.
4. Click **Save and close**.
5. Click **Close dialog**.

## List of potentially harmful attachments and recommended procedure



**WARNING:** These are only general recommendations that are not suitable for every scenario. Applying these recommendations is at your own risk.

From version 11.1, you can automatically release files after a period of time (default 2 hours) after a new scan has taken place and it was again unsuspecting. This procedure is particularly recommended for attachments that are to be quarantined according to the list below.

Usually, harmful contents are detected after 30 minutes at the latest. So while the content is not yet recognized as harmful when it arrives, this can often be the case after a short time.

## I Notes on Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR)

PDF conversion, also called Content Disarm and Reconstruction (CDR), converts Microsoft Word and Microsoft Excel documents and PDF documents into PDF files, removing any active content that may be present. The PDF file can then be opened without hesitation, and the original file can either be left on the email or removed.

CDR is a feature in NoSpamProxy Protection and, in conjunction with NoSpamProxy Large Files, offers an optimal way to defuse unsafe documents and retain the original files.

CDR is configured in the content filter actions and then applied to the corresponding emails via the content filters. A training video on content filters can be found under [Videos](#) (German only). See [Creating content filter actions](#).

This conversion process is very complex and not every document can be converted. For this purpose we have built in a protection mechanism so that the unsafe attachments are not delivered, even if the conversion fails.

- If only Protection, but no Large Files, is licensed, the email for which the conversion did not work is first parked under "Monitoring > Emails on hold" and the configured administrator is informed. This person then has the task of checking the email and can then either forward it via Outlook by downloading it as an EML file or temporarily deactivate/change the content filter for this email and thus force delivery again.

- If Protection and Large Files are licensed, the original file is loaded onto the Web Portal if the conversion fails - if desired also if the conversion is successful - but is then locked there so that it must also be released by the administrator - in contrast to the settings for successful conversion. The email itself is delivered to the recipient, with the appropriate information for downloading, but without the converted PDF file, as this was not possible.



**NOTE:** This protective mechanism cannot be changed or influenced.



**NOTE:** As the conversion component is provided by a third party, we have very limited influence over it. If the conversion cannot be carried out to your satisfaction, send us the file to be converted, if possible. **Make sure that the file does not contain any personal data.** We then make this file available to the third-party provider for analysis. We would like to point out that feedback from our side is not possible, as the adjustment process can be very lengthy.

## **I** Setting up URL Safeguard

### **Activating the URL Safeguard**

To use the URL Safeguard, you must add it as an action to a rule. See **Step 5: Configuring actions.**

## Configuring the URL Safeguard

Additional settings can be made in the default partner settings or for individual partner domains. See [Default partner settings](#) and [Editing partner domains](#).

## Customising allowlists

### NoSpamProxy Allowlist

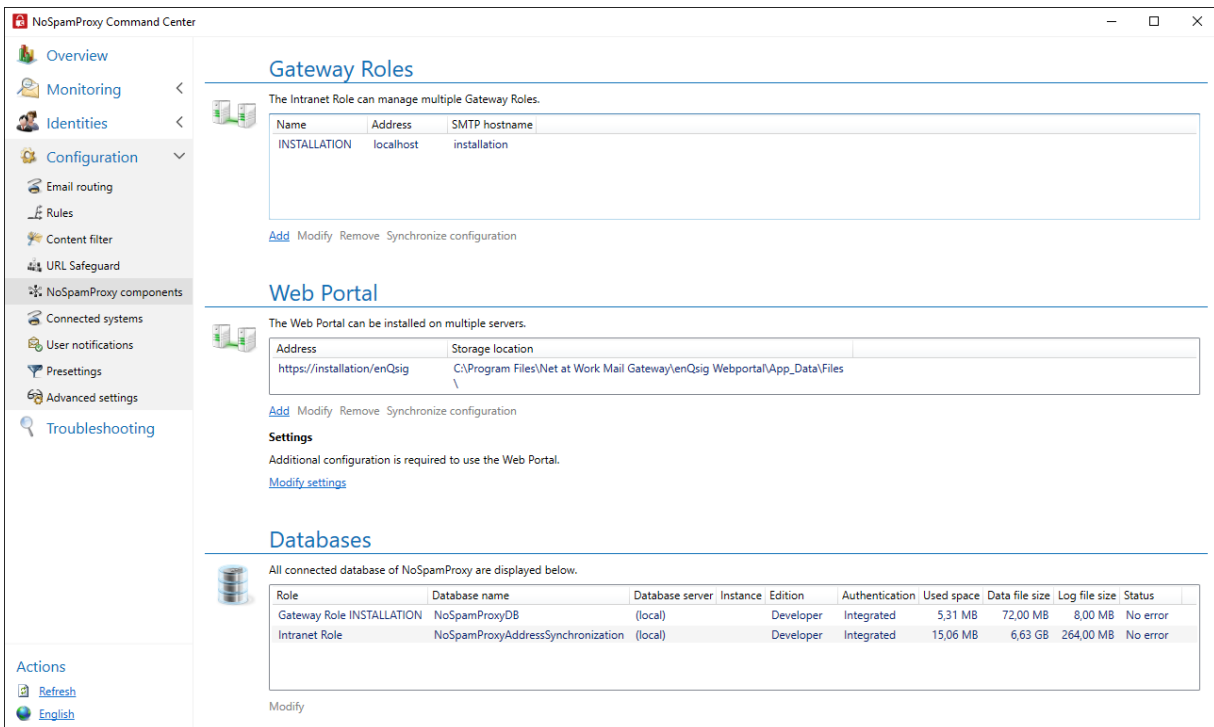
1. Go to **Configuration > URL Safeguard > Allowlist for Domains > NoSpamProxy Allowlist**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Check or uncheck **Automatically download and use the NoSpamProxy Allowlist**.
4. Click **Save and close**.

### Local Allowlist

1. Go to **Configuration > URL Safeguard > Allowlist for Domains > Additional Domains**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Enter one or more domains into the input field and click **Add**.
4. Click **Save and close**.

# NoSpamProxy components

Here you configure the connections between the individual components of NoSpamProxy. Information on the selection of components can be found in the installation manual.



The screenshot displays the NoSpamProxy Command Center interface. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities, Configuration (expanded), Connected systems, User notifications, Presettings, Advanced settings, and Troubleshooting. The main content area is divided into three sections: Gateway Roles, Web Portal, and Databases.

**Gateway Roles**

The Intranet Role can manage multiple Gateway Roles.

Name	Address	SMTP hostname
INSTALLATION	localhost	installation

[Add](#) [Modify](#) [Remove](#) [Synchronize configuration](#)

**Web Portal**

The Web Portal can be installed on multiple servers.

Address	Storage location
<a href="https://installation/enQsig">https://installation/enQsig</a>	C:\Program Files\Net at Work Mail Gateway\enQsig Webportal\App_Data\Files

[Add](#) [Modify](#) [Remove](#) [Synchronize configuration](#)

**Settings**

Additional configuration is required to use the Web Portal.  
[Modify settings](#)

**Databases**

All connected database of NoSpamProxy are displayed below.

Role	Database name	Database server	Instance	Edition	Authentication	Used space	Data file size	Log file size	Status
Gateway Role INSTALLATION	NoSpamProxyDB	(local)		Developer	Integrated	5,31 MB	72,00 MB	8,00 MB	No error
Intranet Role	NoSpamProxyAddressSynchronization	(local)		Developer	Integrated	15,06 MB	6,63 GB	264,00 MB	No error

[Modify](#)

## Configuration files for the roles

The configuration of NoSpamProxy is stored in an XML file on the server. This file can also be backed up using conventional backup software. However, NoSpamProxy writes this file back when the configuration is changed, so that a conflict can occur here during simultaneous backup.

NoSpamProxy creates the new file as a temporary file while writing the configuration, renames the original file, for example to *GatewayRole.config.backup*. Only then does NoSpamProxy rename the temporary file to *GatewayRole.config*.

With a normal, file-based backup, you have therefore always backed up either the most recent copy or the version of the configuration that was changed shortly before.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you save this file before making any changes to the configuration. This allows you to return to the previous state at any time.

## Configuration files for the roles

**Gateway Role** | %ProgramData%\Net at Work Mail  
Gateway\Configuration\GatewayRole.config

**Intranet Role** | %ProgramData%\Net at Work Mail  
Gateway\Configuration\IntranetRole.config

**ServerManagement Service** | %ProgramData%\Net at Work Mail Gateway\

## I Intranet Role

The Intranet Role contains the entire configuration of NoSpamProxy and manages the cryptographic keys.

### Setting up user notifications

In order to authorise other users to take over monitoring functions in NoSpamProxy, for example, you must assign appropriate roles to these users.

1. Open the Windows computer management on the system on which the Intranet Role is installed.

## 2. Go to **Local Users and Groups > Groups**.

There you will find the following groups:

- NoSpamProxy Configuration Administrators
- NoSpamProxy Disclaimer Administrators
- NoSpamProxy Monitoring Administrators
- NoSpamProxy People and Identities Administrators

## 3. Assign the desired roles to the corresponding users.

If the users are also to carry out updates at a later date, these users must be included in all groups and be authorised to manage the database of the respective role. See [How to set up database permissions](#).



**NOTE:** If NoSpamProxy has been installed on an Active Directory domain controller, there are no longer any local user groups. The groups can then be found there with the same names in the Active Directory.

## **| Gateway Role**

The Gateway Role is the actual core of NoSpamProxy. It can either be installed on the same server as the Intranet Role or on a different server. Depending on your environment, this role can be installed either in a Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) or in the Intranet.

NoSpamProxy accepts the emails on port 25, checks them for spam and rejects them if necessary.

NoSpamProxy Encryption checks emails to local recipients for valid signatures and decrypts them. Emails to external recipients are signed and encrypted, depending on the configuration. It also provides an interface to De-Mail, Deutschland-Online infrastructure and POP3 mailboxes.



**NOTE:** To build a highly available system, several Gateway Roles can be installed on different servers. The current configuration is transferred from the Intranet Role to all connected Gateway Roles. See [Infrastruktur-Empfehlungen](#).

## Adjusting the configuration

In some cases, the configuration of a Gateway Role may differ from that of the Intranet Role.

- Click **Synchronise configuration** to synchronize the configuration with the selected roles.



**NOTE:** Please note that the amount of data in the database of the Intranet Role will increase in the short term and can therefore lead to a full database. This is often the case when an SQL Express database is in use. The overfilling is normally reduced automatically.

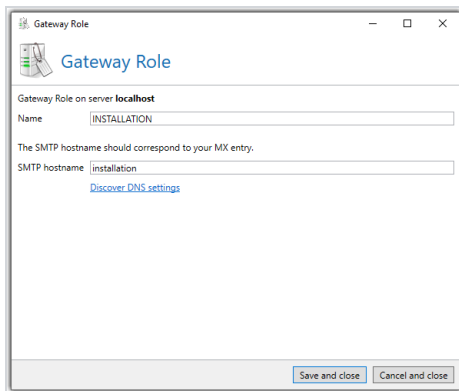
## Server identity

When connecting to external servers, the client introduces itself to the received server with the HELO command or EHLO command followed by the server name.

**EXAMPLE:** EHLO mail.netatwork.com

Some servers check whether this name is resolvable by DNS. The resolvability of this name is specified in an RFC. If the name is not resolvable, some other email servers will consider this a spam feature. The FQDN, which can be resolved on the Internet, should be entered here. Usually the MX of the own email domain is entered here.

1. To change this setting, click **Modify** under **Server hostname**.



2. Specify a name under **SMTP Server Name**.



**NOTE:** You can also have the DNS name for your domain resolved automatically. The primary domain of your license is used for this purpose. Click **Find out** the DNS settings . A dialog will appear listing all available DNS identities for your domain in order of priority.

3. Click **Save and Close**.

## Connecting to a Gateway Role



**NOTE:** If the Gateway Role is installed on a server outside your own domain, an integrated administrator account is required to establish the connection. This refers to the Windows account *Administrator*, not a self-created account with administrator rights.

1. Go to **Configuration > NoSpamProxy components > Gateway Roles** .
2. Click **Add**.
3. Specify your current installation configuration.
4. Perform one of the following two steps:
  - If both roles are on the same server
    - Click **Save and Close**.
  - If both roles are located on different servers
    1. Geben Sie unter **Servername** und **Port** den Namen und den Port der Gatewayrolle an, unter dem die Intranetrolle die Gatewayrolle erreichen kann.
    2. (Optional) If the NoSpamProxy Command Center and the Intranet Role require different connection information to connect to the Gateway Role, enable the appropriate radio button and specify the server name and port.
    3. Click **Save and close**.

## Behaviour of connectors when adding Gateway Roles

---

Upon installation of the first Gateway Role, all inbound and outbound send connectors are automatically switched on.

If one or more additional Gateway Roles are added, the following (desired) behaviour occurs:

- Send connectors that were switched on on all existing roles are also switched on on the new roles.
- Send connectors that were switched off on one or more roles will not be switched on on the new roles.
- Receive connectors are not affected.

This behaviour prevents unwanted email traffic from being sent via a new Gateway Role whose configuration has not yet been completed.

## How to query the Windows Performance Counter using PRTG

The following performance counters are available on the server with the NoSpamProxy Gateway Role and can be integrated into PRTG.

```
\NoSpamProxy Queues(_total)\Currently active  
\NoSpamProxy Queues(_total)\Delay notifications sent  
\NoSpamProxy Queues(_total)\Network failures  
\NoSpamProxy Queues(_total)\Non delivery reports sent  
\NoSpamProxy Queues(_total)\Pending mails
```

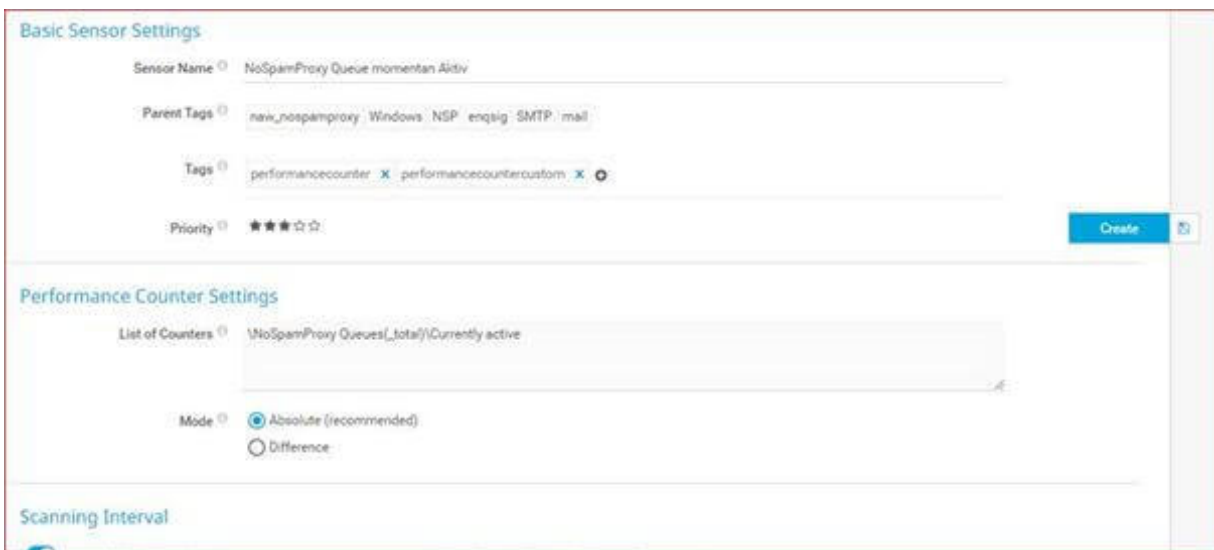
```
\NoSpamProxy Queues(_total)\Relay notifications sent
```

1. In PRTG select the device (Gateway Role Server).
2. Add a **PerfCounter Custom Sensor** using the right mouse button.
3. Restrict the search for the sensor to be created using **Custom Sensors/Performance Counters**.
4. The sensor name can be freely assigned
5. Under **List of Counters**, enter one of the above (copy and paste).



**NOTE:** The interval is inherited from the host by default, but it can also be defined (see below).

6. Click **Create**.



The screenshot displays the PRTG sensor configuration interface. The top section, titled "Basic Sensor Settings", includes fields for "Sensor Name" (set to "NoSpamProxy Queue momentan Aktiv"), "Parent Tags" (set to "navi\_nospamproxy", "Windows", "NSP", "enqsig", "SMTP", "mail"), "Tags" (set to "performancecounter" and "performancecountercustom"), and "Priority" (set to "★★★★☆"). A "Create" button is visible on the right. The bottom section, titled "Performance Counter Settings", includes a "List of Counters" field (set to "\NoSpamProxy Queues(\_total)\Currently active") and a "Mode" section with radio buttons for "Absolute (recommended)" and "Difference". A "Scanning Interval" section is partially visible at the bottom.

## Setting concurrent outbound connections

To change the number of outbound connections of the Gateway Role, proceed as follows:

1. Stop the Gateway Role for which you want to make the changes.
2. On the Gateway Role, go to **C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Configuration\**.
3. Open the file **Gateway Role.config**.
4. Add the following attributes below the tag `<netatwork.nospamproxy.proxyconfiguration ... >`, in the tag `<queueConfiguration>`:

```
maxConcurrentConnections="NumberOfConnections"  
maxConcurrentConnectionsPerDomain="NumberOfConnections"  
"<mtlingo type="
```

```
" prevChar="" nextChar="" />
```

5. Save the file.

This limits the number of concurrent connections to 100, whereby only a maximum of 10 simultaneous connections are permitted per domain.

**EXAMPLE:** `<queueConfiguration maxConcurrentConnections="100"  
maxConcurrentConnectionsPerDomain="10" />`

## Setting concurrent inbound connections

NoSpamProxy dynamically determines the number of parallel connections. The basis for this decision is the CPU and memory utilisation. To stop this behaviour, proceed as follows:

1. Stop the Gateway Role.
2. On the Gateway Role, go to **C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Configuration\**.
3. Open the file **Gateway Role.config**.
4. Look for the line beginning with the following characters:  
`<netatwork.nospamproxy.proxyconfiguration...`
5. Add the following value below this line:

```
<connectionLimits
  hardUpperConnectionLimit="NumberOfConnections"
  minimumNumberOfConcurrentSessions="NumberOfConnections" />
```

6. Save the configuration file.
7. Then start the Gateway Role.

If the values are not specified, as in this example, the dynamic limit applies (depending on the CPU load). Both values are integer values.

- With the value `hardUpperConnectionLimit` you set the maximum limit of connections.

- The value `minimumNumberOfConcurrentSessions` determines the minimum number of concurrent connections.

**EXAMPLE:** `<connectionLimits hardUpperConnectionLimit="100" minimumNumberOfConcurrentSessions="50" />`

## How to change the SMTP connection properties

1. Open the **Gateway Role.config** file in the directory "**C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Configuration\**.

2. Find the following line:

```
<netatwork.nospamproxy.proxyconfiguration ... >
```

3. Add the following entry directly below this line:

```
<smtpServicePointConfiguration
maxActiveConnectionsPerEndPoint="25"
maxConnectionIdleTime="00:01:00"
isServicePointRecyclingEnabled="false"
maximumMailsPerSession="2" />
```

4. Adjust the values to the desired value.



**NOTE:** Before you save the **Gateway Role.config** file, stop the **NoSpamProxy - Gateway Role** service. Only then can you save the configuration file properly.

## Adjusting the delivery attempts and repeat intervals

The default settings are as follows:

- The first attempt is made after five minutes.
- The second attempt is made after ten minutes.
- The third attempt is made after 15 minutes.
- Each additional attempt is made every 30 minutes.
- The first delivery delay notification is generated after six hours.
- After one day, the delivery is stopped.

To make changes to the settings, proceed as follows:

1. Stop the Gateway Role.
2. Go to **C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Configuration\** on all computers where Gateway Roles are installed.
3. Find the file **Gateway Role.config**.
4. Find the following line in the file:  
`<netatwork.nospamproxy.proxyconfiguration ... >`
5. Add the following entry directly below this line if it does not already exist in a similar form:

```
<queueConfiguration firstRetryInterval="00:15:00"
secondRetryInterval="00:30:00"
thirdRetryInterval="01:00:00"
subsequentRetryInterval="04:00:00"
```

```
expirationTimeout="3.00:00:00"  
sendDelayNotificationAfter="12:00:00" />
```

6. Adjust the values as desired.
7. Save the file.
8. Restart the Gateway Role(s).

## Web Portal

The Web Portal allows users to store passwords for PDF mail and to write replies to PDF Mails.

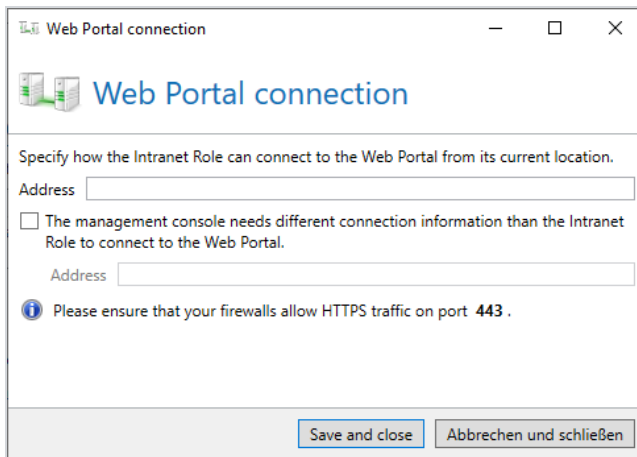


**NOTE:** To build a highly available system, the Web Portal can be installed on multiple servers.

### Connecting Intranet Role and Web Portal

To use the Web Portal, you must first establish a connection between the Intranet Role and the Web Portal. You can then configure the individual features.

1. Go to **Configuration > NoSpamProxy Components > Web Portal**.
2. Click **Add**.



Web Portal connection

Web Portal connection

Specify how the Intranet Role can connect to the Web Portal from its current location.

Address

☐ The management console needs different connection information than the Intranet Role to connect to the Web Portal.

Address

**i** Please ensure that your firewalls allow HTTPS traffic on port **443**.

Save and close Abbrechen und schließen

3. Enter the HTTPS address of the Web Portal under **Address**.
4. If the NoSpamProxy Command Center requires a different address for the connection to the Web Portal, tick the checkbox and enter this address.
5. Click **Save and close**.

## Adjusting the configuration

In exceptional cases, the configuration of a Web Portal may differ from that of the Intranet Role.

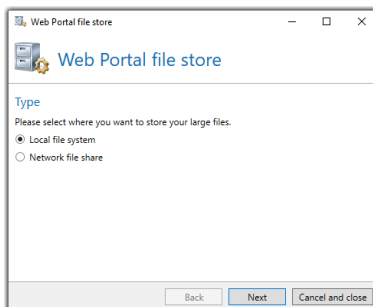
- In this case, click **Synchronize configuration** to synchronize the configuration with the selected Web Portals.



**NOTE:** Please note that the amount of data in the database of the Intranet Role will increase in the short term and can therefore lead to a full database. This is often the case when an SQL Express database is in use. The overfilling is normally reduced automatically.

## Configuring the file storage location

You can adjust the file location for large files that you send via NoSpamProxy Large Files after you set up the connection.



The following locations are available:

**Local file system**| Specify a path on a local storage for which the accounts specified in the dialog have the appropriate rights.

**Network file share**| Specify the path to the network share. Select whether you access the share through the server's computer account or whether a specific user account is used for this.

**Amazon S3**| Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) is a cloud-based object storage service.



**NOTE:** To be able to use Amazon S3 as a storage location, you must enable this option using the PowerShell cmdlet **Set-NspWebPortalSettings**.

## Editing general settings

The current settings for the Web Portal are displayed under **Configuration > NoSpamProxy components > Web Portal > Settings**.

- Click **Edit settings** to make changes to the settings.

### General tab

The screenshot shows a window titled "Web Portal settings" with three tabs: "General", "PDF Mail", and "Large Files". The "General" tab is active. It contains the following sections:

- General:** A text box for "The address of the Web Portal is used for external email recipients."
- Portal addresses:**
  - A text box for "External HTTPS address".
  - A checkbox labeled "Use a different address for requests from within your organization".
  - A text box for "Internal HTTPS address" (disabled when the checkbox is unchecked).
- Secure web emails:**
  - A checkbox labeled "Enable secure web emails without an invitation link".
  - A text box for "The address can be used by your partners." (disabled when the checkbox is unchecked).

At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Save and close" and "Cancel and close".

**Portal addresses** When using the Web Portal, a link to the Web Portal is inserted into emails if necessary. The link contains the address at which the Web Portal can be reached from the Internet.

- Enter the address at which the Web Portal can be reached at **External HTTPS address**.
- To use a different address for access from the company network, enter it under **Internal HTTPS Address**.

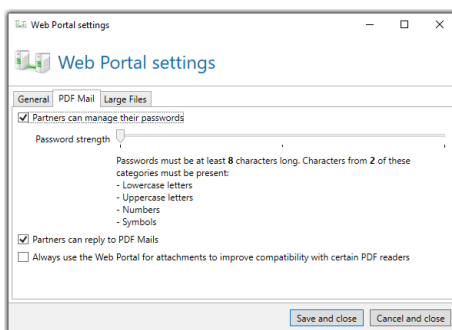
**Secure web emails**| Under **Secure web emails** you can specify an address that allows the Web Portal to be used without an invitation link. If the Web Portal is used in this way, an external partner can send an email to recipients in your company via the Web Portal. To do this, he or she must enter a sender address and a valid recipient address of a corporate user stored in NoSpamProxy.



**NOTE:** If no company users are stored in NoSpamProxy, at least the domain is validated for the recipient address to see whether it is present in the list of corporate domains.

## PDF Mail tab

---



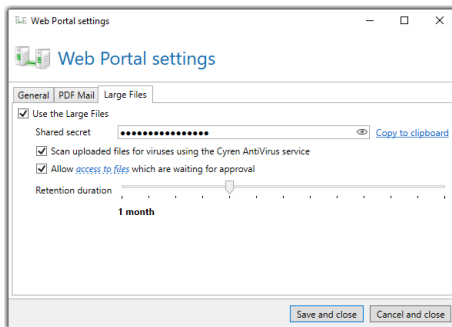
**Partners can manage their passwords**| Activate this feature if you want communication partners to be able to manage their passwords for PDF Mails themselves. If a partner has not yet stored a password, NoSpamProxy will first ask the partner to store one before delivering an email that has been marked as "Automatically encrypt". You can also select the level of your password requirements for PDF Mail here. You can use the slider to determine how long and complex the password must be.

**Partners can reply to PDF Mails**| If this feature is activated, communication partners can send replies to PDF Mails via the Web Portal. This enables secure two-way communication without certificates.

**Always use the Web Portal for attachments**| If you activate this function, attachments in PDF mails are always uploaded to the Web Portal. In the PDF Mail only a link remains. This improves compatibility with PDF readers, for example on mobile devices that do not support attachments.

## Large Files tab

---



**Use Large Files**| Activates the Large Files function.

**Shared secret**| A shared secret is required to secure communication between the Outlook Add-in and the Web Portal. Enter a password that is at least 12 characters long. The 'Large Files' files stored by the Web Portal are fully encrypted. The decryption key is only available to the recipient, so administrators of the server have no access to the files.

**Allow access to files which are waiting for approval**| If you want to check files waiting for approval before they are approved, you must explicitly allow this here.

**Retention period**| After the file has been approved under **Large Files**, no further access by the 'Monitoring Administrators' group is possible.

## Notes on the installation of the Web Portal

When integrating the Web Portal into the configuration, special settings must be observed in certain application scenarios:

**The Web Portal is operated in parallel with the Gateway Role and/or Intranet Role**

In this case, please refer to the corresponding [article KB926642 in the Microsoft documentation](#).

The recommended method is **Method 1: Create the LSA hostnames(Local Security Authority)** that can be referenced in an NTLM authentication request. This is especially true for productive environments.



**WARNING: Method 2: Disable loopback functionality for authentication** should only be applied to test environments!



**NOTE:** The articles at Microsoft swap the methods in the English and German variants. Always check the exact designation.

**The Web Portal is operated on a system in the DMZ/computer(s) outside the domain**

In this case, please refer to the corresponding [article KB926642 in the Microsoft documentation](#).

## Changing the design of the NoSpamProxy Web Portal in version 10

This article describes how to change the colors and logo used on the Web Portal in NoSpamProxy 10.



**NOTE:** You need at least rudimentary HTML knowledge to be able to make the adjustments.

- The corresponding files are located in the directory **%Program Files%\Net at Work Mail Gateway\enQsig Webportal\**.
- Make the changes in the files **..\Content\Site.css** (color adjustments) and the file **..\Views\Shared\\_Layout.cshtml** (logo and others).

## Changing the colors

To edit the colors, edit the file `Site.css`. There are four relevant places for the color:

### Upper area

```
header { margin: 0 auto 0 auto; border-bottom: 10px solid #C01B1B; width: 100%; background-color: white; }
```

- This position marks the colored bar in the upper area. Change the value `#C01B1B` to another value to change the color.
- To change the thickness of the bar, increase or decrease the value `10px`.

### Progress bar

```
.dz-upload { height: 2px; background-color: #C01B1B; width: 0; }
```

- This area determines the color of the progress bar when a file is transferred to the Web Portal. With `height` you change the thickness of the bar, with `background-color` you change the color.

## Action buttons

```
.actionRow .button { background: #C01B1B; padding-top: 16px;
padding-bottom: 16px; padding-left: 24px; padding-right:
24px; clear: both; margin: 15px 0 0 0; color: white; text-
decoration: none; border: none; }
```

- This area determines the appearance of the action buttons, such as the **Login** button. You can change the color with `background` or the size with `padding`.

## Font colour of the listing of all files already uploaded

```
.FileName { colour: #C01B1B; padding: 4px 0 4px 0; }
```

## Changing the logo

To change the displayed logo, edit the file `_Layout.cshtml`. The following line is responsible for the display of the logo:

```

```

Name the position and name of the new file here and save the settings.

## I Databases

Under Databases, you make changes to the connection to the database of the corresponding role.



**NOTE:** The database is created during setup. You only need to make changes if you move the database to another SQL server.

### Changing database connection settings



**NOTE:** Before you change the connection settings, back up the existing database and import this backup to the new database server.



**NOTE:** Each database of roles is independent and must not be shared between roles. This means that if you have two Gateway Roles, you also create two databases. These may share both a server and an instance, but are otherwise independent of each other. Independent databases increase the stability of NoSpamProxy and facilitate administrative tasks such as upgrades or database moves.

1. Go to **Configuration > NoSpamProxy components > Databases**.
2. Click **Modify**.

3. Under **Database location**, specify the server on which the database is located.



**NOTE:** If the database is on the same server as the Gateway Role, select **Local Server**. If the database is located on another server, first select the **Remote host** option and then enter either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server where the database is located.

4. Under Instance, **specify** whether the default instance of the SQL server or a named instance is used for the database of the Gateway Role.



**NOTE:** If this is the default instance of the SQL server, select the option **Default**. Otherwise, click **Named Instance** and then enter the name of the corresponding instance.

5. Under Database name, **enter the** name of the corresponding database(s).  
The following database names are used by default:

- Gateway Role

NoSpamProxyGatewayRole

- Intranet Role

NoSpamProxyIntranetRole



**NOTE:** If you only want to change the connection parameters, select the corresponding field in the lower part of the dialog.

6. Click **Next**.
7. On the Administrative Authentication page, specify which user account to use to make changes to the selected database, enter the appropriate credentials, and click **Next**.

8. Under **Service authentication**, specify how the Gateway Role should log on to the SQL Server.



**NOTE:** If SQL authentication is disabled on the SQL server, then the integrated authentication must be used. Otherwise you can choose between Integrated and SQL authentication.

9. Select the desired action on the next page. Depending on the available databases, different options are available here.
10. Click **Finish**.

## Saving databases

The roles of NoSpamProxy use the following databases:

- **Gateway Role** NoSpamProxyGatewayRole
- **Intranet Role** NoSpamProxyIntranetRole
- **Web Portal** NoSpamProxyWebPortal



**NOTE:** If NoSpamProxy uses your existing standard or Enterprise SQL Server, you can configure a periodic backup of all databases there using the Enterprise Manager. When using SQL Server Express Edition, you must manually back up the database with a script and restore it if necessary.

## Backing up the databases via the command line

---

Enter the following lines in the command line:

**For the Gateway Role database** `osql -S (local)\NameDerInstanz -E -Q "BACKUP DATABASE NoSpamProxyGatewayRole TO DISK = 'c:\NoSpamProxyGatewayRole.bak' "<mtlingo type="" prevChar="" nextChar="" "> >`

**For the Intranet Role database** `osql -S (local)\NameDerInstanz -E -Q "BACKUP DATABASE NoSpamProxyIntranetRole TO DISK = 'c:\NoSpamProxyIntranetRole.bak' "<mtlingo type="" prevChar="" nextChar="" "> >`

**For the Web Portal database** `osql -S (local)\NameDerInstanz -E -Q "BACKUP DATABASE NoSpamProxyWebPortal TO DISK = 'c:\NoSpamProxyWebPortal.bak' " >`

These rows save the corresponding databases in files without shutting down the database for this purpose. You should therefore check whether you schedule an appropriately customized call as a regular task with Windows Task Scheduling.

## Creating a backup

---

Enter the following lines in the command line:

**For the Gateway Role database** `osql -S (local)\NameDerInstanz -E -Q "RESTORE DATABASE NoSpamProxyGatewayRole FROM DISK = 'c:\NoSpamProxyGatewayRole.bak' WITH FILE= 1, NOUNLOAD, REPLACE "<mtlingo type="" prevChar="" nextChar="" "> >`

**For the Intranet Role database** `osql -S (local)\NameDerInstanz -E -Q "RESTORE DATABASE NoSpamProxyIntranetRole FROM DISK = 'c:\NoSpamProxyIntranetRole.bak' WITH FILE= 1, NOUNLOAD, REPLACE "<mtlingo type="" prevChar="" nextChar="" "> >`

**For the Web Portal database** `osql -S (local)\NameDerInstanz -E -Q "RESTORE DATABASE NoSpamProxyWebPortal FROM DISK = 'c:\NoSpamProxyWebPortal.bak' WITH FILE= 1, NOUNLOAD, REPLACE "`

The databases must already exist in order for the recovery to work.



**NOTE:** Since the SQL server keeps the databases themselves permanently open, they cannot be captured via a normal backup of the files, such as via NTBACKUP.

## How to set up database permissions

It is common that not only the user who originally performed the installation needs to perform updates, but also other administrator accounts. To do this, it is necessary to set up the appropriate permissions for these additional users. The corresponding steps are described below:

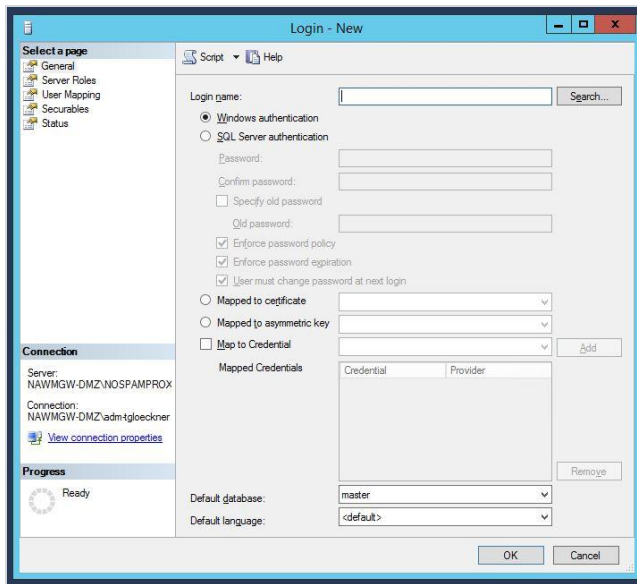


**NOTE:**

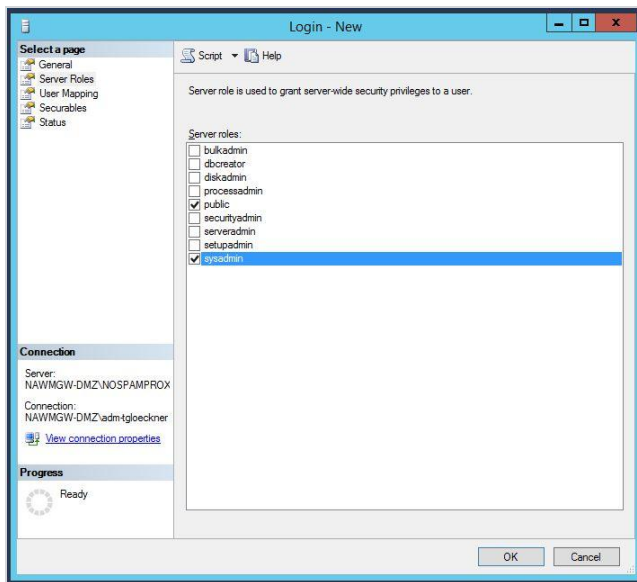
- All steps apply to all roles of NoSpamProxy; they only differ in the database names.
  - Database Intranet Role: NoSpamProxyIntranetRole
  - Database Gateway Role: NoSpamProxyGatewayRole
  - Database Web Portal: NoSpamProxyWebPortal
- Users and user groups (local or domain) can be registered

1. Log on to the system with the user who performed the installation.
2. Install the SQL Management Studio.

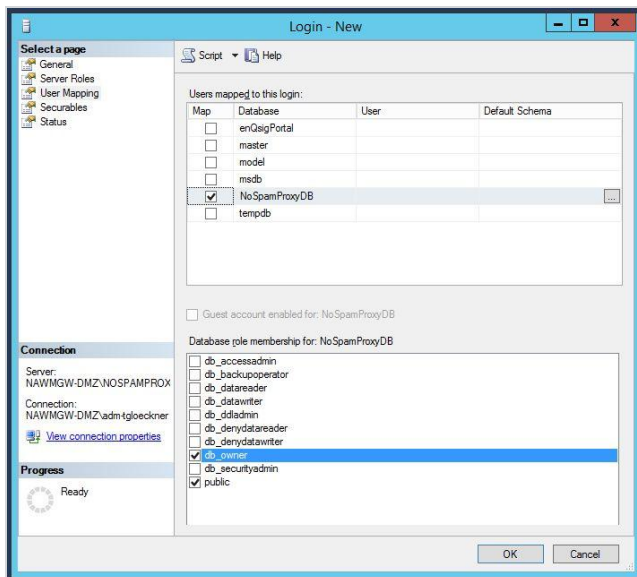
3. Open SQL Management Studio and log on to the local instance that contains the NoSpamProxy database(s), using Windows authentication.
4. Expand the **Security** and **Logins** folders.
5. Right-click the **Logins** folder.
6. Select **New Login** from the context menu.
7. Under **General**, select the user to be added.  
Keep the item **Windows Authentication**.



8. Under **Server Roles**, check **sysadmin**.



9. Under **User Mapping**, check the box for the corresponding database. Additionally, activate the role **db\_owner**.



10. Make further optional settings if required.
11. Save the new login and close SQL Management Studio.

To verify access, log on to the system with the added user, open SQL Management Studio and check if you can view the database tables. If this works, access is set up.

## Checking the database integrity

This article describes how you can check the integrity of the database and repair it if errors occur.



**NOTE:** You need Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio for this action.

1. Open the Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.
2. Expand the menu item **Databases**.
3. Click the **NoSpamProxyDB** database and then in the top left on **New query**. A white window appears on the right side.
4. To check a suspicious database for errors, use the following command in SQL Management Studio:

```
DBCC CHECKDB ( 'NoSpamProxyGatewayRole' )
```

5. The following command corrects any errors:

```
DBCC CHECKDB ('NoSpamProxyGatewayRole', REPAIR_
REBUILD)
```



**NOTE:** Before executing the command, you must change the access mode ("Restrict Access") from MULTI\_USER to SINGLE\_USER under Options in the database properties.

6. Check the success of the action with the following command:

```
DBCC CHECKDB ('NoSpamProxyGatewayRole')
```



**NOTE:** The output should now no longer contain any error messages. If the database could not be successfully repaired and error messages still appear, please execute the command **DBCC CHECKDB ('NoSpamProxyDB', REPAIR\_ALLOW\_DATA\_LOSS)**. Afterwards you should check the success with the above mentioned command again. If the database cannot be repaired, you can also create a new database using the NoSpamProxy interface. Under certain circumstances there is a defect in the SQL Server.

## Notes on database sizes



**NOTE:** If you use Microsoft SQL Server Express and update to version 14 or higher of NoSpamProxy Server, the utilisation of the database used must not exceed 70 percent (7 GB).

Below are some instructions on how to react to a corresponding message in the NoSpamProxy Command Center:

### Warning levels

NoSpamProxy warns you about a full database in two stages:

#### When the database is 70% full

- a message is added to the event log,
- a note is displayed on the start page of the NoSpamProxy Command Center under "Issues" and
- a notification is sent to the set administrator email address.

#### When the database is 90% full

- a message is added to the event log,
- a note is displayed on the start page of the NoSpamProxy Command Center under "Issues" and
- a notification is sent to the set administrator email address.

### What are possible reasons for a full database?

The reasons are listed below.

- The configured period of message tracking and its details (monitoring) is too long.
- There are problems with communication between two or more NoSpamProxy roles.
- Expired data has not been properly deleted from the database.

## How to analyse the database

To find out why the database has reached the respective size, proceed as follows:

1. Install Microsoft SQL Management Studio on the system on which the affected database is installed. Microsoft SQL Management Studio is available free of charge from the Microsoft website.
2. Start the SQL Management Studio.
3. Log on to the SQL instance where the database is located. Usually these instances are called **(local)\SQLEXPRESS** or **(local)\NOSPAMPROXY**.
4. After successfully logging on, execute the following SQL queries (depending on the NoSpamProxy role involved); to do this, you only need to change the first row to the following databases:
  - Intranet Role: `USE [NoSpamProxyIntranetRole]`
  - Gateway Role: `USE [NoSpamProxyGatewayRole]`

- Webportal: `USE [NoSpamProxyWebPortal]`

```
USE [NoSpamProxyIntranetRole] / USE
[NoSpamProxyIntranetRole] / USE
[NoSpamProxyWebPortal] GO SELECT isnull(t.NAME,
'Total') AS TableName, s.name as SchemaName,
p.rows AS RowCounts, CAST(ROUND(((SUM(a.used_
pages) * 8) / 1024.00), 2) AS NUMERIC(36, 2))
AS SizeInMB FROM sys.tables t INNER JOIN
sys.indexes i ON t.OBJECT_ID = i.object_id
INNER JOIN sys.partitions p ON i.object_id =
p.OBJECT_ID AND i.index_id = p.index_id INNER
JOIN sys.allocation_units a ON p.partition_id =
a.container_id LEFT OUTER JOIN sys.schemas s ON
t.schema_id = s.schema_id WHERE t.NAME NOT LIKE
'dt%' AND t.is_ms_shipped = 0 AND i.OBJECT_ID >
255 GROUP BY ROLLUP(t.Name, s.Name, p.Rows)
HAVING p.rows is not null or (p.rows is null
and t.name is null) ORDER BY sum(a.used_pages)
desc GO
```

## How can the results be interpreted and solved?

In the output of the SQL script you can find an overview of all existing tables of the database as well as information about their size.

	TableName	SchemaName	RowCounts	SizeInMB
1	Total	NULL	NULL	25789.40
2	UrlVisit	MessageTracking	104839460	15549.06
3	Operation	MessageTracking	4257612	6485.40
4	MessageTrackEntry	MessageTracking	1236374	935.69
5	MessageOperation	MessageTracking	4254899	581.94
6	Action	MessageTracking	5832197	538.54
7	MessageAddress	MessageTracking	2530697	473.00
8	DeliveryAttempt	MessageTracking	2272604	403.08
9	Filter	MessageTracking	3124350	389.36
10	Url	MessageTracking	866710	258.39
11	Attachment	MessageTracking	367485	58.34
12	LevelOfTrust	MessageTracking	751502	38.86
13	UserAndDomainStatistic	MessageTracking	155662	32.83
14	Certificate	CertificateStore	4759	16.75
15	Association	LargeFileTransfer	14095	7.59
16	Certificate	MessageTracking	8138	3.80

There are two specific tables that should be empty in normal operation or whose entries should change constantly each time they are called:

- DataReplication.artefact

PendingRequest	CertificateEnroll...	45	0.16
Artefact	DataReplication	0	0.16
Rule	Disclaimer	17	0.08

- MessageTracking.LegacyMessageTrackEntry

Mapping	AddressRewriting	54	0.08
LegacyMessageTrack...	MessageTracking	0	0.05
Key	Dkim	2	0.03

If data accumulates in these tables but does not degrade, this indicates that problems exist. These must be clarified and solved by the NoSpamProxy support. In this case, please contact the partner responsible for you or – if you have purchased manufacturer support – the NoSpamProxy support directly.

All other scenarios indicate too large a memory space for message tracking, which you can edit and reduce in the NoSpamProxy Command Center under **Configuration > Advanced Settings > Monitoring**. The reduction usually takes up to 24 hours, so that a result is usually not visible until the next day.

## Saving databases

The roles of NoSpamProxy use the following databases:

- **Gateway Role** NoSpamProxyGatewayRole
- **Intranet Role** NoSpamProxyIntranetRole
- **Web Portal** NoSpamProxyWebPortal



**NOTE:** If NoSpamProxy uses your existing standard or Enterprise SQL Server, you can configure a periodic backup of all databases there using the Enterprise Manager. When using SQL Server Express Edition, you must manually back up the database with a script and restore it if necessary.

### Backing up the databases via the command line

---

Enter the following lines in the command line:

- For the Gateway Role database

```
osql -S (local)\NameOfTheInstance -E -Q "BACKUP  
DATABASE NoSpamProxyGatewayRole TO DISK =  
'c:\NoSpamProxyGatewayRole.bak'" >
```

- For the Intranet Role database

```
osql -S (local)\NameOfTheInstance -E -Q "BACKUP  
DATABASE NoSpamProxyIntranetRole TO DISK =  
'c:\NoSpamProxyIntranetRole.bak'" >
```

- For the Web Portal database

```
osql -S (local)\NameOfTheInstance -E -Q "BACKUP  
DATABASE NoSpamProxyWebPortal TO DISK =  
'c:\NoSpamProxyWebPortal.bak'" >
```

These rows save the corresponding databases in files without shutting down the database for this purpose. You should therefore check whether you schedule an appropriately customized call as a regular task with Windows Task Scheduling.

## Creating a backup

---

Enter the following lines in the command line:

- For the Gateway Role database

```
osql -S (local)\NameOfTheInstance -E -Q "RESTORE
DATABASE NoSpamProxyGatewayRole FROM DISK =
'c:\NoSpamProxyGatewayRole.bak' WITH FILE= 1,
NOUNLOAD, REPLACE "
```

- For the Intranet Role database

```
osql -S (local)\NameOfTheInstance -E -Q "RESTORE
DATABASE NoSpamProxyIntranetRole FROM DISK =
'c:\NoSpamProxyIntranetRole.bak' WITH FILE= 1,
NOUNLOAD, REPLACE "
```

- For the Web Portal database

```
osql -S (local)\NameOfTheInstance -E -Q "RESTORE
DATABASE NoSpamProxyWebPortal FROM DISK =
'c:\NoSpamProxyWebPortal.bak' WITH FILE= 1, NOUNLOAD,
REPLACE "
```

The databases must already exist in order for the recovery to work.



**NOTE:** Since the SQL server keeps the databases themselves permanently open, they cannot be captured via a normal backup of the files, such as via NTBACKUP.

## Creating an encryption dump

You can configure NoSpamProxy so that it saves decrypted data in a file before this data is processed further in an email. This can be very helpful in analysing formatting problems related to encryption and decryption.

To create the encryption dump, proceed as follows:

1. Go to **C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Configuration\**.
2. Open the file **Gateway Role.config**.
3. Find the following line:  
`</configSections>`.
4. Add the following lines below the line just mentioned:

```
<netatwork.nospamproxy.cryptography> <debugging  
dumpDecryptedContentToDisk="true" />  
</netatwork.nospamproxy.cryptography>
```



**NOTE:** If the section

`netatwork.nospamproxy.cryptography` already exists, just add the line `<debugging dumpDecryptedContentToDisk="true" />`.



**NOTE:** Before you save the configuration file, you must stop the Gateway Role service. Only then can you save the configuration file properly.



**NOTE:** The decrypted contents are now stored in the local service temp folder. Usually this is the folder

**C:\Windows\ServiceProfiles\LocalService\AppData\Local\Temp.**

If the files are not created there, please check the folder

**C:\Windows\Temp.**

## Creating a memory dump

This article describes how to create a memory dump for NoSpamProxy support on a Windows 2008 Server R2 or later.

1. Open the Task Manager on the appropriate server.
2. Switch to the **Details** tab and sort the entries by name.
3. Right-click the appropriate process and choose **Create dump file**.

Send the memory dump to the NoSpamProxy Support at [support@nospamproxy.de](mailto:support@nospamproxy.de).

## How to export static domain trust settings

To extract the static entries from the trust positions, proceed as follows:

1. Open SQL Management Studio (Express) to manage your NoSpamProxy database.
2. Connect to the database server on which the NoSpamProxyGatewayRole database is located.
3. Click **Neue Abfrage / New query** to create a new SQL query for the NoSpamProxyGatewayRole.
4. Add this query to the query editor:

```
USE NoSpamProxyGatewayRole; SELECT Domain, Gravity,
LevelOfTrust FROM DomainTrustEntry WHERE (Gravity =
0);
```

5. Perform the query by clicking on the red exclamation mark.

This query lists all static entries in the domain trust. If you need a application to import into version 7.6, or if you have problems executing these commands, please contact our support team. With this query you can bypass the use of our Mail Gateway API sample for reading the domain trusts.



**NOTE:** In a new installation, the static domain trust settings for known email providers are automatically entered during setup.

# How to change the WebPort for NoSpamProxy

The Web Port is the port that the NoSpamProxy Command Center connects to when accessing the individual roles. Furthermore, the roles connect via the configured port and add 1. If the WebPort is configured to 6060, the services connect via 6061.



**WARNING:** Only change this port if absolutely necessary. In any case, read this article in its entirety.

To change the WebPort, proceed as follows:

1. Stop all NoSpamProxy services.
2. Go to **C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Configuration\**.



**NOTE:** If you also use the Web Portal, go to %Program Files%\Net at Work Mail Gateway\enQsig Webportal\App\_Data\.

3. Locate the two configuration files **intranet role.config** and **gateway role.config**. In these files you make the appropriate settings.
4. Look for the line that begins with the following characters:  
`<netatwork.nospamproxy.webservices.`
5. Add the following attribute there:

```
port="NewPortValue"
```



**NOTE:** The `serverCertificateThumbprint` attribute is different on each NoSpamProxy server.

6. Change the URL reservation via netssh. Please use **HTTPSYSMANAGER** from <http://httpsysmanager.codeplex.com/>. Alternatively, enter the following command via the command line:

```
netsh http add urlacl url=http://+:8060/NoSpamProxy/  
sddl=D:(A;;GX;;;LS)(A;;GX;;;NS)
```

7. Now restart all services.
8. Right-click in the NoSpamProxy Command Center **NoSpamProxy** and then click **Change server**.
9. Adjust the port in this dialog.
10. Go to **Configuration > NoSpamProxy components** and recreate the role connections.

# Connected systems

Here you manage connections to third-party products that interact with NoSpamProxy.

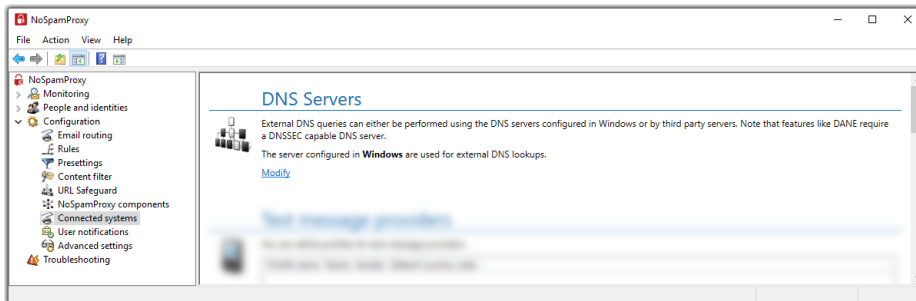
The screenshot displays the NoSpamProxy Command Center interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities, Configuration (expanded), User notifications, Presettings, Advanced settings, and Troubleshooting. The main content area is titled 'Connected systems' and contains several sections:

- DNS Servers**: A section with an icon of server racks. Text explains that external DNS queries can be performed using DNS servers configured in Windows or by third-party servers. It notes that features like DANE require a DNSSEC capable DNS server. A link to 'Modify' is provided.
- Text message providers**: A section with a mobile phone icon. Text states that profiles for text message providers can be defined. A table with columns 'Profile name', 'Name', 'Sender', and 'Default country code' is shown. Below the table are links for 'Add', 'Modify', and 'Remove'.
- Archive connectors**: A section with an icon of a server and a document. Text explains that an archive connector provides a connection between the Gateway Role and an archive, and that each connector has one or more profiles specifying how emails are archived. A table with columns 'Connector name', 'Profiles', and 'Profile count' is shown. Below the table are links for 'Add', 'Modify', and 'Remove'.
- De-Mail providers**: A section with a 'De' logo icon. It includes two sub-sections:
  - Telekom De-Mail connections**: Text states that providers are used to connect to Telekom De-Mail gateways. A table with columns 'Name', 'Certificate', 'Gateway Role', 'Target', and 'Domains' is shown. Below the table are links for 'Add', 'Modify', and 'Remove'.
  - Mentana-Claimssoft connection**: Text states that no connection has been configured yet. A link to 'Add' is provided.
- digiSeal server connection**: Text states that no connection has been configured yet. A link to 'Modify' is provided.
- CSA Whitelist**: A section with a server icon and a green checkmark. Text states that the CSA Whitelist is downloaded every 24 hours. Links for 'Modify' and 'Download CSA Whitelist now' are provided.

At the bottom left, under the 'Actions' heading, there are links for 'Refresh' and 'English'.

# DNS Servers

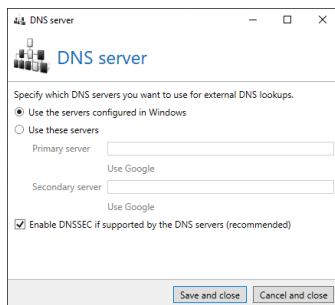
When using DANE you need a DNS server that supports DNSSEC. Since the DNS servers supplied with Windows server operating systems do not currently support this function, you can set up a connection to such a server here.



## Configuring the DNS server

To enter the IP addresses of a primary and secondary server with DNSSEC support, proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Configuration > Connected systems > DNS Servers**.
2. Click **Modify**.



3. Perform one of the following two steps:
  - Select **Use the servers configured in Windows** if you want to use Windows' own servers.

- Select **Use these servers** if you want to use a third-party server. Then enter the corresponding addresses.



**TIP:** Click **Use Google** to enter the publicly accessible Google DNS server into the configuration.

4. Select whether you want to activate **DNSSEC** (recommended).



**NOTE:** DNSSEC secures the transmission of resource records through digital signatures. This ensures the authenticity of these resource records.

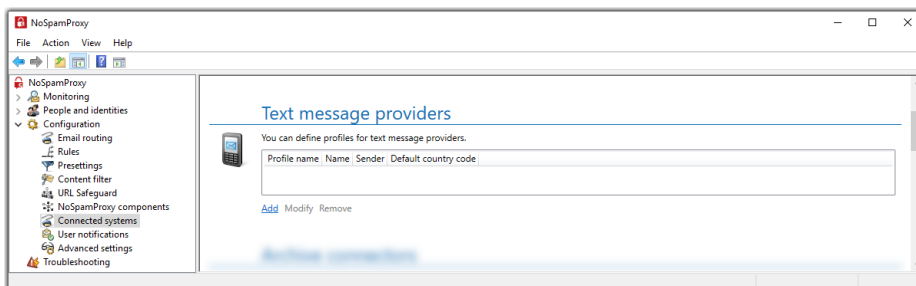
5. Click **Save and close**.



**NOTE:** DANE is used to check the transport encryption when delivering emails to your partners. See [Default partner settings](#).

## SMS providers

When encrypting PDF documents, it is possible to send a text message that contains the password to the recipient of the email. To use this function, you must configure at least one profile.



## Supported text message providers

The following providers are currently supported:

- mes.mo GmbH Any-SMS - <http://www.any-sms.de>
- tyntec - <http://www.tyntec.com>
- CM Telecom - <http://www.cmtelecom.com>

## Configuring text message providers

1. Go to **Configuration > Connected systems > Text message providers**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select the desired text message provider and click **Next**.



**NOTE:** Technical details of the selected provider are now displayed. Usually you do not need to change these settings. Otherwise click **Edit properties** and make the desired changes.

4. Click **Next**.
5. Specify a name for the profile, specify the sender and enter a default country code.

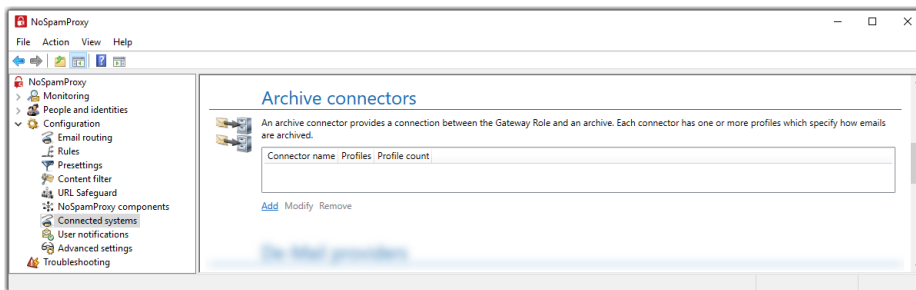


**NOTE:** You can either enter the phone number of a mobile phone or an alphanumeric string with a maximum length of 11 characters, e.g. the name of your company. The country code is used if a telephone number without a country code was used when sending.

6. Click **Next**.
7. Enter the access data that you have received from the selected provider.
8. Click **Finish**.

## Archive connectors

Via the archive interface, emails and qualified signed documents can be transferred to an external archive system. Currently supported are the file system, an archive mailbox and d.velop d.3. It is possible to use multiple archive systems in parallel.



The configuration of an archive connector comprises two areas:

**Archive connectors** | Connectors define the interface to an external archive system such as the file system.

**Profiles** | One or more profiles are created within a connector. It can be used to set properties such as the exact storage location for emails and documents. In addition, the metadata of emails is mapped to metadata of the archive system, if necessary.



**NOTE:** Emails are archived as they are received by NoSpamProxy. NoSpamProxy does not perform encryption or decryption, nor does NoSpamProxy upload attachments to the Web Portal. Note that emails are only archived if NoSpamProxy does not reject the email. If, for example, the malware scanner responds or the email cannot be decrypted, the respective email is not archived.

## Configuring archive connectors

1. Go to **Configuration > Connected systems > Archive connectors**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Select the archive system and enter a name for the connector.
4. Make the appropriate configuration for the selected archive system and click **Next**.
  - When storing emails and documents in the file system, you only need to specify a path. Emails and documents are stored in folders below this path.

Archive connector

Archive specific properties

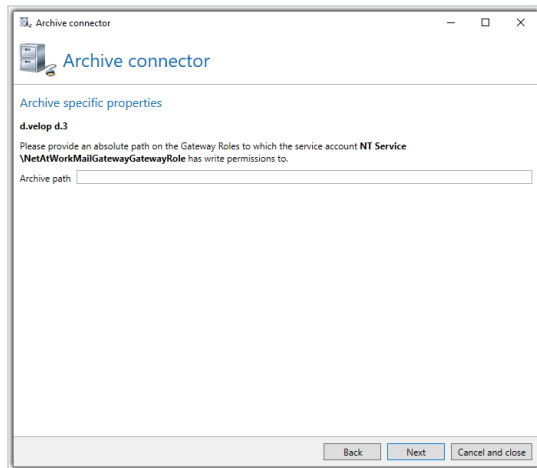
**File system**

Please provide an absolute path on the Gateway Roles to which the service account **NT Service \NetAtWorkMailGatewayGatewayRole** has write permissions to, e.g.: 'C:\archive'.

Archive path

Back Next Cancel and close

- The connector for the journaling mailbox has no other settings on the connector. The profiles are displayed directly.
- For a connector to a d.velop d.3 system you only have to specify a path. Emails and documents are written into this directory and are retrieved from this directory by the d.velop d.3 system.



5. (Optional) Create profiles for the connector.



**NOTE:** The content of the profile configuration page depends on the selected archive system.

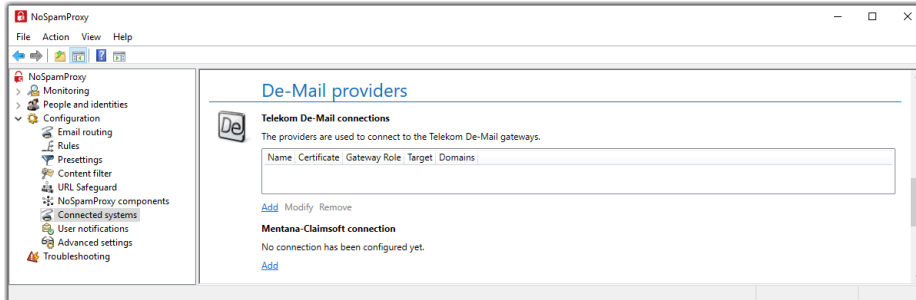


**NOTE:** Profiles allow you, for example, to distribute emails and documents to different folders within an archive system. Give the new profile a name and specify which emails are archived by this profile. Note that emails with a qualified signed attachment are always archived. You can optionally archive all other emails as well.

6. Click **Finish**.

# De-Mail providers

Here you can manage the connections to the De-Mail system.



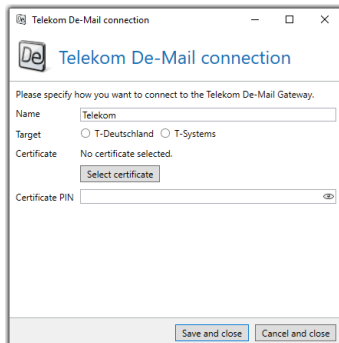
**NOTE:** The information entered in this section is immediately available for both the De-Mail send connectors and the receive connectors. This means that you only have to configure the connection once and it is immediately available in all connectors.

## Telekom De-Mail connections

To create connectors for De-Mail via Telekom, the connections to the service provider must first be configured.

Proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Configuration > Connected systems > De-Mail providers**.
2. Click **Add** under **Telekom De-Mail connection**.



3. Enter the name of the profile and select whether you are connecting via T-Deutschland or T-Systems.
4. Select the certificate that is used to secure the connection to the service provider.
5. Enter the certificate PIN (smartcard PIN).
6. Click **Save and close**.



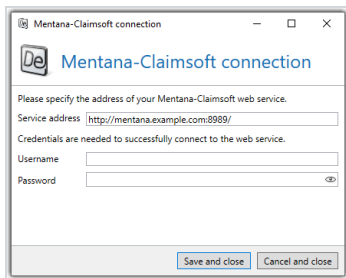
**NOTE:** The selection of the certificate automatically results in the binding of the profile to a Gateway Role. Connectors that use the profile are automatically assigned to the Gateway Role on which the certificate resides.

## Connection to Mentana-Claimsoft

Mentana-Claimsoft's De-Mail connectors require you to set up a connection to that provider's web service.

Proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Configuration > Connected systems > De-Mail providers**.
2. Click **Add** under **Mentana-Claimsoft connection**.



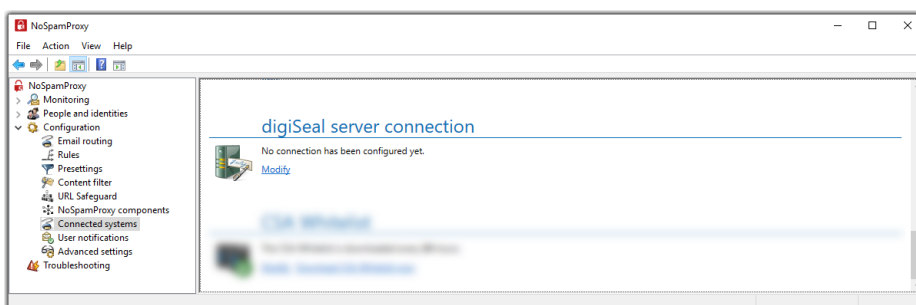
3. Enter the service address at which the web service can be reached.
4. Enter the credentials to access the service.
5. Click **Save and close**.



**NOTE:** The information entered in this dialog is immediately available for both the De-Mail send connector and the receive connector. This means that you only have to configure the connection once and it is immediately available in all connectors.

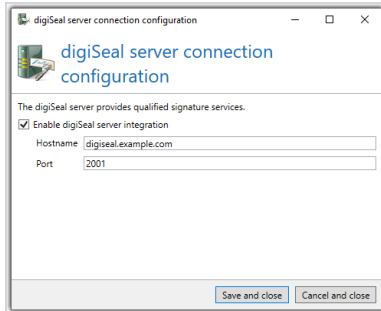
## **|** digiSeal server connection

When using the digiSeal server services for qualified document signatures, NoSpamProxy Encryption requires the connection information to this server.



## Configuring digiSeal server connection

1. Go to **Configuration > Connected systems > digiSeal server connection**.
2. Click **Modify**.



3. Enter the following information

**Server name**| The name of the target system.

**Port**| The network port under which the digiSeal server services can be accessed.

4. Click **Save and close**.



**NOTE:** To fully connect to the digiSeal server, please follow the instructions under [Anbindung an digiSeal server](#).

## CSA Certified IP List

To use the CSA Certified IP List filter, you must configure the download of the list.

### Configuring CSA Certified IP List

1. Go to **Configuration > Connected Systems > CSA Certified IP List**.
2. Click **Modify**.

3. Select **Enable daily download of the CSA Certified IP List** if you want to use this filter CSA Certified IP List.



**NOTE:** If you do not want to use the above filter, select **Disable download**.

4. Click **Save and close**.



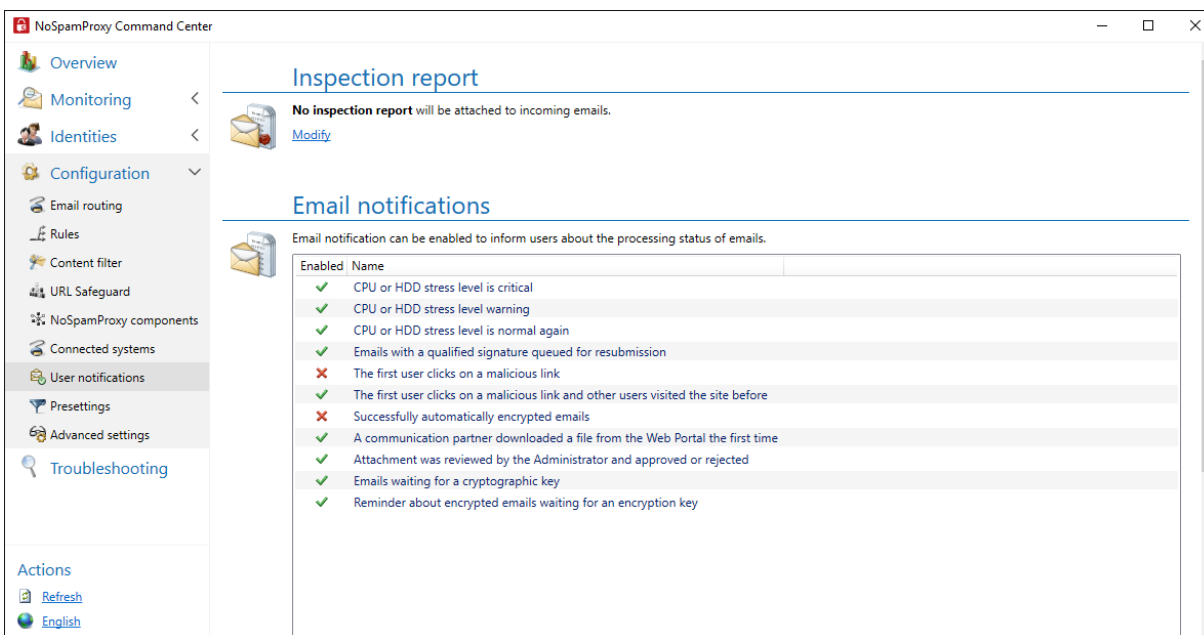
**NOTE:** To manually download the CSA Certified IP List, click **Download CSA Certified IP List now** under **Configuration > Connected Systems > CSA Certified IP List**.



**NOTE:** The CSA Certified IP List will be downloaded from `service.nospamproxy.de`. Access to this address is required for downloading the list. Make sure that your firewall settings allow this.

# User notifications

Here you define which notifications NoSpamProxy sends to internal and external contacts and which sender addresses are used.



## Inspection report



This feature is available if you have purchased a corresponding licence.

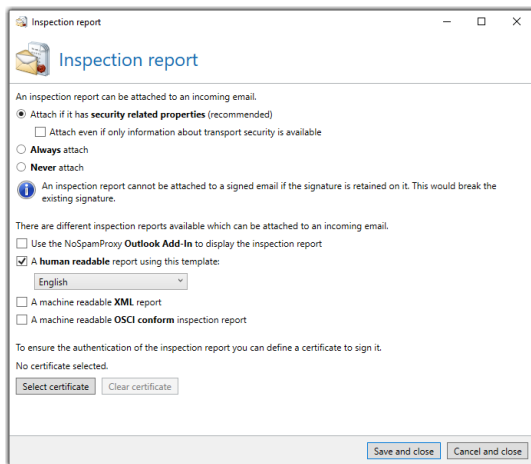
The inspection report contains information about security-relevant properties and procedures during email processing. It can be attached to emails to local addresses. The currently set values are displayed under **Inspection report**.



**NOTE:** No inspection report can be attached to signed emails if the signature remains on the email. This signature would otherwise break the existing signature. To configure the removal of signatures, see the information under **S/MIME and PGP verification and decryption.**

## Configuring the inspection report

1. Go to Configuration > User notifications > Inspection report.
2. Click Modify.



3. Select to which emails the report should be attached.
4. Select the type of inspection report.
  - **Inspection report for the Outlook Add-In** This test report is embedded in the email as an X header. This embedded data can be displayed by the Outlook Add-In of NoSpam Proxy.



We recommend using this type of inspection report, as all other types create an attachment which will be attached to the respective email.

- **Human-readable report** | The textual inspection report presents the information in a human-readable form. Select a template for the report to be used for the presentation of the report. By default, there are two templates, German and English. The templates are located in the configuration directory of the Gateway Role and have the extension `HtmlProcessCardTemplate`. If you want to customize the templates, do not change the default templates as they will be overwritten when the software is updated. Instead, create a copy of an existing template and modify it.
- **OSCI-compliant inspection report** | The OSCI-compliant test report creates an OSCI docket. This is used for automatic processing by OSCI-compliant third-party systems. This inspection report must be signed with a certificate.
- **XML inspection report** | The XML test report is used for automatic processing of the inspection report data by another application.

5. (Optional) Select a private email certificate.



**NOTE:** You can digitally sign the test report to ensure authenticity. This signature is mandatory for the OSCI docket; it is optional for all other inspection reports.

6. Click **Save and close**.



**NOTE:** To suppress the creation of the test report rule-based, see the information under [Steps in creating rules](#).

## Email notifications

Here you configure the notifications regarding the status of the email processing.

1. Go to **Configuration > User notifications > Email notifications**.
2. Select one or more notifications.
3. Click **Enable selected / Disable selected** to enable or disable the respective notifications.

## How to customise NoSpamProxy notifications

You only need to make these changes on the Intranet Role. The contents are automatically replicated to all connected Gateway Roles.



**NOTE:** The corresponding CSHTML files are located in the %Program Files%\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Intranet Role\Templates directory, or in the %Program Files%\NoSpamProxy\Intranet Role\Templates directory for new installations with version 10.



**NOTE:** You need at least rudimentary HTML knowledge to be able to make the adjustments.

## Overview of available template files

### **ApplySymmetricEncryptionPasswordNotice.cshtml**

When a user sends an email as a PDF mail, he receives a notification about the password used, or an information that the recipient has been sent the password via SMS or that the creation of the PDF Mail failed. The text of the notification is in this file. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

### **AttachmentManager.cshtml**

When NoSpamProxy removes a file attachment from an email, a replacement file is attached to the email to notify the user that the original file has been removed. The corresponding message text can be edited in the Attachment Manager.cshtml file.

### **AttachmentQuarantine.cshtml**

When NoSpamProxy removes an attachment from an email and quarantines it, a replacement file is attached to the email to notify the user that the original file has been removed. The user has the possibility to download the remote file directly from the quarantine via a download link. The corresponding message text can be edited in the attachment Quarantine.cshtml file.

### **AttachmentQuarantineApproval.cshtml**

When NoSpamProxy removes an attachment from an email and quarantines it, a replacement file is attached to the email to notify the user that the original file has been removed. The user has the option to download the remote file from the quarantine via a download link after approval by the administrator. The corresponding message text can be edited in the attachment QuarantineApproval.cshtml file.

## **CommonMailTemplate.cshtml**

This file defines the general appearance of notifications. Here, for example, the colors and the logos to be used are stored as HTML tags. All other files except the "ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionPdfHeader.cshtml" contain only the text modules.

## **ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionPdfHeader.cshtml**

The appearance of the PDF file is defined in this file. Colors and logos must be defined here again.

## **ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionTeaser.cshtml**

This file contains the text for the carrier email of the PDF file. The recipient of a PDF Mail is informed that the actual content of the e-mail is in the attached PDF document. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **DeliveryNotificationReport.cshtml**

This is the content of the transmission report if a user has requested it in Outlook. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **DeMailConnectorIssueEscalationMail.cshtml**

If NoSpamProxy cannot download de-mails from the DMDA for a period of time, a notification is sent to the administrative email address. The content of this notification can be edited here.

## **English.HtmlProcessCardTemplate**

The content of the German test report can be edited in this file. Audit reports are generated at the request of the administrator if an e-mail was signed and/or encrypted, for example.

## **EncryptedMailNotificationTemplate.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Encrypt automatically" and enQsig does not have a cryptographic key, the recipient will be informed. This email will tell you what options he or she has. The content of this email is recorded in this template. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **EncryptionDelayedNotificationForSender.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Encrypt automatically" and enQsig does not have a cryptographic key, the recipient will be informed. The content of the delay message is defined here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **EncryptionFailureNotificationForSender.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Encrypt automatically" and an error occurs during encryption, the sender will be informed. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **EncryptionSucceededNotificationForSender.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Automatically encrypt", he will receive a notification as soon as the email has been encrypted. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **English.HtmlProcessCardTemplate**

The content of the English test report can be edited in this file. Audit reports are generated at the request of the administrator if an e-mail was signed and/or encrypted, for example.

## **LargeFileDownloadNotification.cshtml**

If a user sends a file via Large Files, he will receive a notification when the recipient has downloaded the file. The content of the notification can be edited here.

## **MailOnHoldExpired.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Encrypt automatically" and enQsig has no cryptographic key and the recipient of the email does not deposit a cryptographic key within 5 days, the email will be discarded and the sender will be informed. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **MailValidationError.cshtml**

If a De-Mail cannot be sent via the De-Mail connector, the sender will be notified. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **PolicyFailureNonDeliveryMessage.cshtml**

If an email violates any of the guidelines in the rulebook, the sender is notified. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **QualifiedSignatureIssueEscalationMail.cshtml**

If the verification or creation of a qualified signature fails, a notification is sent to a specified address. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **SampleAutoReply.cshtml**

Since NoSpamProxy 10 it has been possible to have an automatic reply generated if, for example, a particular email address is contacted. The content of this automatic reply can be adjusted here.

You can copy this file and save it under a different name. You then specify the template file for the respective purpose in the NoSpamProxy rule set.

## **SymmetricPasswordUpdateNotification.cshtml**

If an external recipient has stored a password for the PDF email on the Web Portal, he or she will be notified of the change. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **WordFilterMatchNotification.cshtml**

Since NoSpamProxy 10, it has been possible to send a notification to a specific email address as soon as certain words appear in an email. In this file you define the content of the notification.

## **Adaptation of the template files**

Start with the file "CommonMailTemplate". Here you determine the appearance of all emails. Customise the StyleSheets in the respective files according to your needs. The integration of the corresponding logo is also done in this file. In later

operation, the logo files with the correct name must also be available in the Templates folder.

All other files contain only the text modules.

After restarting the Intranet Role, the new designs are used and replicated to the Gateway Role(s).



**NOTE:** Note that the files may be overwritten during patching/upgrading. After a patch/upgrade, check if your customised files are still present.

## **I** Using different designs for sender domains

This article describes how to adapt the templates for the design of the system emails of NoSpamProxy (including PDF mails) from NoSpamProxy 11.x onwards so that different designs are used based on the sender domain. NoSpamProxy uses the template engine for .NET "Razor" as the basis for the dynamic change.

The CSHTML files to be edited are located in the %Program Files%\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Intranet Role\Templates directory. After the change, the files are automatically replicated to all connected Gateway Roles.



**NOTE:** You need at least rudimentary HTML knowledge to be able to make the adjustments.

## Adaptation of the template files



**NOTE:** You can request ready-made sample files with different designs from NoSpamProxy Support. This file can only be used from NoSpamProxy 11.0 onwards. In this example two different designs are used for the sender domains netatwork.de and nospamproxy.de. You can expand or reduce the number of domains at any time.

1. After downloading, first unpack the ZIP file into a temporary folder. It contains the following files:
  - CommonMailTemplate.cshtml
  - CommonMailTemplateNaw.cshtml
  - CommonMailTemplateNsp.cshtml
  - ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionPdfHeader.cshtml
  - ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionTeaser.cshtml
  - EncryptedMailNotificationTemplate.cshtml
2. Start with the files that begin with "CommonMailTemplate". Here you determine the appearance of all emails that are required for PDF Mail.



**NOTE:** Make sure that you store the default design in the **CommonMailTemplate.cshtml**. Customize the stylesheets in the respective files according to your needs. The integration of the corresponding logos is also done in these files. In later operation, the logo files with the correct name must also be available in the Templates folder.

### 3. Customize the

**ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionPdfHeader.cshtml** file. This file determines the layout of the PDF file. Unlike the CommonMail template files, you only need one file to define the exceptions. The adjustments are made in the upper part. An example of three different designs is included.



**NOTE:** You define the design for the different domains. If NoSpamProxy does not find the corresponding send domain in active operation, the default design is used, which you can define with the template editor in the Admin GUI.

### 4. Copy all CSHTML files into the Templates folder of your program version.



**NOTE:** Back up all files contained in the file.



**NOTE:** Note that the files will be overwritten during patching/upgrading. After a version upgrade, do not copy the older, customized files over the newer ones, but adjust them again. Otherwise, there is a risk that new, necessary information will be missing from the template files.

## Overview of available template files

The following list provides an overview of the function of the individual files:

### **ApplySymmetricEncryptionPasswordNotice.cshtml**

When a user sends an email as a PDF Mail, he receives a notification about the password used, or an information that the recipient has been sent the password via SMS or that the creation of the PDF Mail failed. The text of the respective notification is in this file. The appearance regarding colours and logo is determined by the CommonMail template.

### **AttachmentManager.cshtml**

If a file is removed from an email using the content filter rules, the recipient receives an information about it. The attachment can either be removed and deleted, it can be uploaded to the Web Portal and it can be uploaded to the Web Portal and assigned an admin share. A separate text is available for each of the three planned actions, which can be edited in this file. The appearance regarding colours and logo is determined by the CommonMail template.

## **AttachmentManagerNotificationForBlockedAttachmentsModel.cshtml**

If emails with certain file attachments are rejected via the content filter rules, the sender receives an information about the rejection. The content of this message can be defined in this file. The appearance regarding colours and logo is determined by the CommonMail template.

## **AttachmentQuarantine.cshtml**

If a file is moved to the Web Portal using the content filter rules and assigned an admin share, the administrator receives an information mail about it. The content of this email is defined in this file. The appearance regarding colours and logo is determined by the CommonMail template.

## **AttachmentQuarantineApproval.cshtml**

If a file is moved to the Web Portal using the content filter rules, assigned an admin share, and then released by the administrator, the actual recipient of the file receives information about the release. The content of this email is defined in this file. The appearance regarding colours and logo is determined by the CommonMail template.

## **CommonMailTemplate.cshtml**

This file defines the general appearance of notifications. Here, for example, the colors and the logos to be used are stored as HTML tags. All other files except the **ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionPdfHeader.cshtml** contain only the text modules.

## **ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionPdfHeader.cshtml**

The appearance of the PDF file is defined in this file. Colors and logos must be defined here again.

## **ConvertMailContentToPdfAttachmentActionTeaser.cshtml**

This file contains the text for the carrier email of the PDF file. The recipient of a PDF Mail is informed that the actual content of the e-mail is in the attached PDF document. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **ConvertOfficeDocumentToPdfPreface.cshtml**

With the "ConvertOfficeDocumentToPDF" action it is possible to convert Office documents into PDF to provide the recipient with a preview without active content. Information is placed in front of the created PDF document. The content of this message can be defined in this file.

## **DeliveryNotificationReport.cshtml**

This is the content of the transmission report if a user has requested it in Outlook. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **DeMailConnectorIssueEscalationMail.cshtml**

If NoSpamProxy is repeatedly unable to retrieve or send De-Mail, an administrator is notified. The content of this message can be defined here.

## **EncryptedMailNotificationTemplate.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Encrypt automatically" and enQsig does not have a cryptographic key, the recipient will be informed. This email will tell you what options he or she has. The content of this email is recorded in this template. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **EncryptionDelayedNotificationForSender.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Automatically encrypt" and enQsig does not have a cryptographic key, the sender will be informed of the delay. The content of the delay message is defined here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **EncryptionFailureNotificationForSender.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Encrypt automatically" and an error occurs during encryption, the sender will be informed. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **EncryptionSucceededNotificationForSender.cshtml**

If a user marks an email as "Automatically encrypt", he will receive a notification as soon as the email has been encrypted. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **LargeFileDownloadNotification.cshtml**

If the recipient of a file that was previously moved to the Web Portal downloads it, the sender is notified. The content of this message can be defined in this file.

## **MailOnHoldExpired.cshtml**

If a user marks an e-mail as "Automatically encrypt" and enQsig does not have a cryptographic key and the recipient of the email does not deposit a cryptographic key within 5 days, the email will be discarded and the sender will be informed. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **MailValidationError.cshtml**

If a De-Mail cannot be sent via the De-Mail connector, the sender will be notified. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **PolicyFailureNonDeliveryMessage.cshtml**

If an email violates any of the guidelines in the rulebook, the sender is notified. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **QualifiedSignatureIssueEscalationMail.cshtml**

If the verification or creation of a qualified signature fails, a notification is sent to a specified address. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **SampleAutoReply.cshtml**

With the action "AutoReply" it is possible to answer emails with an automatically generated email. The content of this message can be defined here.

## **SymmetricPasswordUpdateNotification.cshtml**

If an external recipient has stored a password for the PDF email on the Web Portal, he or she will be notified of the change. The content of this message is here. The appearance is defined via the CommonMail template.

## **WordFilterMatchNotification.cshtml**

The word filter offers the possibility of a notification to any email address if certain words are found in emails. The content of this notification can be defined here.

# Presettings

Presettings This section contains global settings that can be used in other areas of the configuration. See [RulesPartnersCorporate users](#)

NoSpamProxy Command Center

Overview

Monitoring

Identities

Configuration

Email routing

Rules

Content filter

URL Safeguard

NoSpamProxy components

Connected systems

User notifications

Presettings

Advanced settings

Troubleshooting


Actions

Refresh

English

Branding

The settings below are used on the NoSpamProxy Web Portal and for notification emails.  
The font is **Calibri,Verdana,Arial** with a size of **16px**.  
The colours are **#000000** for the text colour, **#C01B1B** for the accent colour, **#d2d6d9** for borders and **#F8F8F8** for content background.  
The logo below is aligned **left** and has a logo background colour of **#ffffff**.

  
[Modify](#)

Word matching

Global word groups

Name	Scope	Find mode	Match format	Points per match
Common notation for medical products	Subject and body	Obfuscated words	Wildcards	2
Common notation of commercial words	Subject and body	Obfuscated words	Wildcards	2
Common notation of porn words	Subject and body	Obfuscated words	Wildcards	2
Common spam words (german)	Subject and body	Obfuscated words	Wildcards	2

[Add](#) [Modify](#) [Remove](#)

Realtime block lists

Global block lists

Name	Type	URL
Bonded Sender	DNS	query.bondedsender.org
CBL Composite Blocking List	DNS	cbl.abuseat.org
DNSWLorg	DNS	list.dnswl.org
MailSpike	DNS	rep.mailspike.net
NixSpam RBL	DNS	ix.dnshl.manitu.net
Passive Spam Block List	DNS	psbl.surriel.com
SpamCop	DNS	bl.spamcop.net
Spamhaus SBL (Spam Block List)	DNS	sbl.spamhaus.org
Spamhaus Whitelist	DNS	swl.spamhaus.org
Spamhaus XBL (Exploits Block List)	DNS	xbl.spamhaus.org
Spamhaus ZEN	DNS	zen.spamhaus.org
SpamRats	DNS	spam.spamrats.com

[Add](#) [Modify](#) [Remove](#)

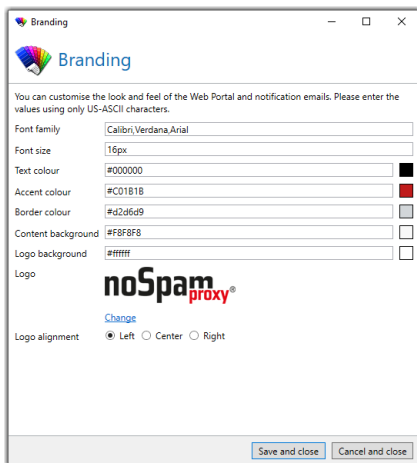


**NOTE:** The changes made here also affect existing rules, partners or corporate users. The settings always apply to all configurations in which they are referenced.

## Word matching

# Branding

The branding determines the appearance of the emails generated by NoSpamProxy as well as that of the Web Portal.



In most cases you will only need to adjust the accent color and logo to reflect your corporate identity.

The branding is applied to the following elements:

- Web Portal
- All email notifications generated by NoSpamProxy
- The replacement attachment for files sent via Large Files

## I Word matching

In this area, you have the option of maintaining lists of expressions for which you want to assign positive or negative SCL points using the **Word matching** filter. The expressions are grouped into individual word groups, which you can use later in the individual rules. For each group of words, you determine whether the corresponding SCL points are to be awarded for the terms. This way you have the possibility to create groups with wanted and unwanted expressions.

### Adding a new word group

1. Go to **Configuration > Presettings > Word matching**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. On the **General** tab, determine
  - the name of the word group,
  - whether points are awarded for matches or for non-matches,
  - the area to which the phrase is applied and

- the SCL points awarded.

**Inhalt der Wortgruppe**

Tab: Allgemein Wörter

Name:

Vergebe Punkte: ☒ Für *jede* Übereinstimmung mit der Wortliste  
☐ Falls **keine** Übereinstimmung gefunden wird

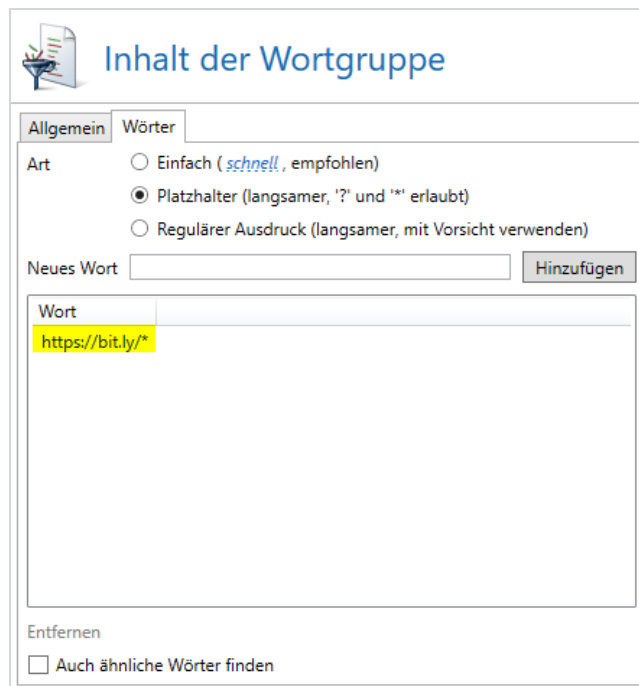
Bereich: ☐ Betreffzeile  
☒ E-Mail-Inhalt

Punkte:   
**10 SCL-Punkte**

4. On the **General** tab, determine

- whether you want to search for exact matches (simple) or use wildcards or regular expressions,
- the words contained in the word list and

- whether you also want to search for similar words.



**Inhalt der Wortgruppe**

**Allgemein** Wörter

Art

- ☐ Einfach (*schnell*, empfohlen)
- ☒ Platzhalter (langsamer, '?' und '\*' erlaubt)
- ☐ Regulärer Ausdruck (langsamer, mit Vorsicht verwenden)

Neues Wort  **Hinzufügen**

Wort

- https://bit.ly/\*

Entfernen

☐ Auch ähnliche Wörter finden

5. Click **Finish**.

## I Realtime block lists

Realtime blocklists (RBL) manage lists of suspicious spam IP addresses. RBLs can be selected individually in the rules.

### Adding a new block list

1. Go to **Configuration > Preferences > Realtime block lists**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Under Common Settings, enter a name and description.

4. Under **Blocklist target**, specify

- whether it is an RBL list that is addressed via DNS or HTTP and
- in the Address field either the IP address or the server name of the server to be queried.

5. Under **Responses**, define

- the possible answers of the requested server and their meaning,
- how many SCL points result from it and
- a descriptive error text.



**NOTE:** A negative value corresponds to bonus points, a positive value corresponds to penalty points. The text of the response may appear in the non-delivery report if the originating server supports this. Thus, the sender of the rejected email knows which blacklist he is on and for what reason. The answer can also be deactivated.

6. Click **Finish**.

# Advanced settings

The screenshot displays the NoSpamProxy Command Center interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities, Configuration (expanded), and Troubleshooting. Under Configuration, there are sub-links for Email routing, Rules, Content filter, URL Safeguard, NoSpamProxy components, Connected systems, User notifications, Presettings, and Advanced settings (selected). At the bottom of the sidebar are links for Actions, Refresh, and English.

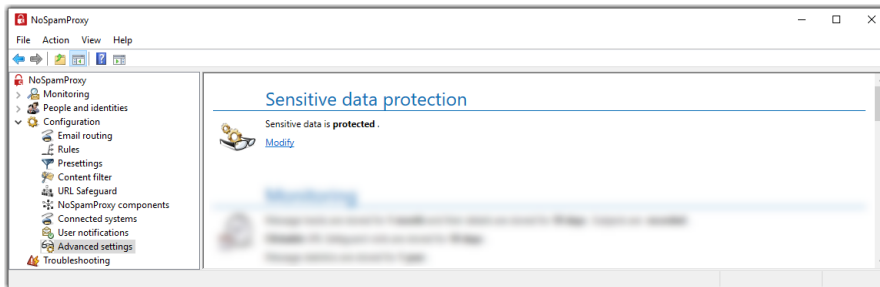
The main content area is titled 'Advanced settings' and contains several sections:

- Sensitive data protection**: A message states 'Sensitive data is protected.' with a 'Modify' link.
- Monitoring**: A clock icon is shown. Text indicates 'Message tracks are stored for 1 month and their details are stored for 10 days. Subjects are recorded.' and 'Clickable URL Safeguard visits are stored for 10 days.' It also states 'Message statistics are stored for 1 year.' and 'Emails are kept on hold for 3 days when waiting for an encryption key from a partner.' with a 'Modify' link.
- Subject flags**: A brief description says 'Insert subject flags into the subject line to control the processing of outbound emails.' Below this is a table with columns: Name, Subject flag, Header, and Additional h. The table lists various email actions and their corresponding subject flags and headers.
- Level of Trust configuration**: A person icon is shown. Text indicates 'MAIL FROM' and 'Header-From' sender addresses are evaluated. It states 'The address pairing bonus is set to 200 trust points and the domain trust bonus is set to 25 trust points.' and 'Domain bonus is not granted for emails sent from free email service providers.' It also states 'Email Authentication is required for all bonuses.' and 'Smart DSN handling is set to automatic. Invalid DSNs get 50 detention points. Valid DSNs get 50 bonus points.' with a 'Modify' link.

Name	Subject flag	Header	Additional h
De-Mail: Request confirmation of dispatch	Versandbestätigung	X-de-mail-confirmation-of-dispatch	
De-Mail: Request confirmation of receipt	Eingangsbestätigung	X-de-mail-confirmation-of-receipt	
De-Mail: Request confirmation of retrieval	Abholbestätigung	X-de-mail-confirmation-of-retrieve	
De-Mail: Mark email as sender-authenticated	Absenderbestätigt	X-de-mail-authoritative	
De-Mail: Mark email as private	Persönlich	X-de-mail-private	
Attachment password	AP	X-NoSpamProxy-RequireAttachmentPassword	
PDF encryption password	PW	X-enQsig-SymmetricEncryptionPassword	
Number for text message notification	SMS	X-enQsig-SymmetricEncryptionNotificationAddress	

Here you will find configuration options that you usually do not need to adjust.

# Sensitive data protection



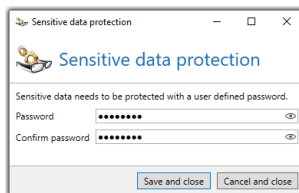
To protect sensitive data such as cryptographic keys or authentication information from being accessed by third parties, you must encrypt them.



**NOTE:** Once activated, the protection cannot be reversed.

## Enabling protection of sensitive data

1. Go to **Configuration > Advanced settings > Sensitive data protection**.
2. Click **Modify**.



3. Enter a password for the protection of sensitive data.
4. Click **Save and close**.

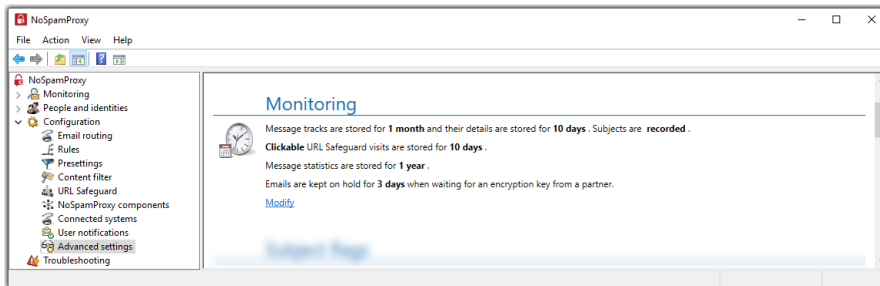


**NOTE:** You can change the password at a later time.



**WARNING:** If you forget the password and the configuration with the encrypted password is deleted, there is no way to access the protected data. Always keep a copy of the password in a safe place.

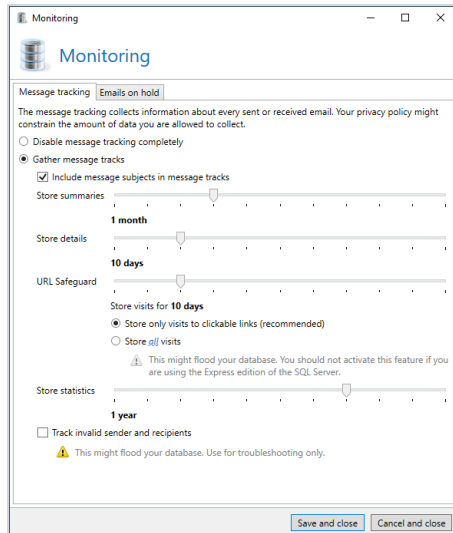
## Monitoring



NoSpamProxy can log all connections in the message tracking. This allows you to see how the individual emails were processed.

## Activating message tracking

1. Go to **Configuration > Advanced settings > Monitoring**.
2. Click **Modify**.

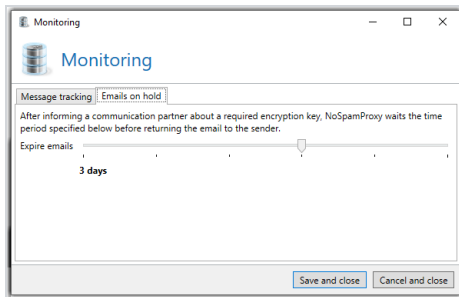


3. On the **Message tracking tab**, select the **Gather message tracks** option.
4. Configure the following options:
  - Store summaries**| The period of time for which emails are backtracked. The message summary information only allows you to see in the message tracking overview whether and when the email you are looking for has arrived and whether it has been accepted or rejected.
  - Store details**| The retention period for the associated message details. In the details you will find the assessment of each filter, information about the origin of the email and the duration of the inspection, as well as other useful information. Since this information makes up the majority of message tracking, it is possible to keep it for a shorter period of time than the summary information.
  - URL Safeguard**| The storage time for visits from clickable links or other URLs such as non-embedded images. If you select the option **Store all visits**, a

large amount of data is generated. You should not activate this option if you are using the Express Edition of Microsoft SQL Server.

**Store statistics** | The period for which you can create reports. To be able to create a meaningful report, we recommend a minimum retention period of 12 months.

5. On the **Emails on hold** tab, configure the retention period for emails that are waiting for an encryption key.



6. Click **Save and close**.

## Notes



**NOTE:** Please consider the data protection regulations existing in your company when configuring this section.



**NOTE:** In order not to let the database size of the message tracking and reports grow uncontrolled, the Intranet Role cleans up the database on a regular basis. All elements that have exceeded a specified age are deleted from the database.



**NOTE:** If you want to discard all message tracking records and statistical data, please select the option **Disable message tracking completely** under the **Advanced Settings** of the Gateway Role. In this case no data will be collected. For example, if you only want to record statistical data, select the option Message tracking records are deleted immediately to delete all message tracking records at 2 a.m.



**NOTE:** If you receive several tens of thousands of emails or spam emails per day, the database size limit may be exceeded with an Express Edition SQL Server. With so many emails, shorter retention periods of message tracking records should be chosen or a SQL Server database should be installed without this limitation.

## Subject flags



Depending on the functions you have licensed, different subject flags may be available.

Subject flags are keywords that enable you to control the processing of individual emails. Inserting a keyword into the subject of an email triggers certain actions. These keywords are removed from the subject line before NoSpamProxy sends the message.

## Inserting subject flags

- Add the desired keywords in brackets to the subject line at the beginning or end.



**NOTE:** Spaces and differences between upper and lower case in keywords are ignored.



**NOTE:** Subject flags must be placed at the beginning or end of the subject line to be processed properly.

## Examples of use

### EXAMPLE:

- The following two examples give the same result:

[pw:secret4312] I Hereby I am sending you the encrypted document

[ PW : secret4312 ] Hereby I am sending you the encrypted document

- Several flags in one bracket:

[Unencrypted, PDF, PW:secret4312] Hereby I am sending you the

- Several subject flags in different brackets:

[Unverschlüsselt] [PDF] [PW:secret4312] Hereby I send you the encrypted document

## Available subject flags

Subject flag	Triggered action
[Delivery confirmation]	De-Mail: Requests a dispatch confirmation from De-Mail. Corresponds to a registered letter.
[Receipt confirmation]	De-Mail: Requests a receipt confirmation from De-Mail. Corresponds to a registered letter.
[Collection confirmation]	De-Mail: Requests a collection confirmation from De-Mail.
[Confirmed by sender]	De-Mail: Adds the status <b>Authenticated by sender</b> to De-Mails.
[Personal]	De-Mail: Adds the status <b>Private</b> to De-Mails.

Subject flag	Triggered action
	Corresponds to a <b>Registered letter to addressee only</b> for letters.
[Autoverschlüsseln]	Automatic encryption: Uses cryptographic keys to protect the email or secures the email content and all attachments through PDF Mail if no cryptographic keys are available.
[PW]	Encrypts attached PDF documents. PW] for an automatically generated password, e.g. [PW:secret4937] sets the password 'secret4937'.
[SMS:No]	Text message notification: The phone number is used in the Protect attachments with a password action to send a PDF password entered by one of the configured text message providers directly to the recipient's mobile phone via text message. If no password has been assigned, this number is ignored.
[PWreport]	Enforce password notification: The set or generated password of the Protect Attachments with a password action is always sent to the sender of the email when using this subject flag.
[Signiert]	Enforce signature: Forces a digital signature using cryptographic keys. If <b>Autoverschlüsseln</b> is requested, this option is ignored.
[Unsigniert]	Suppress signature: Suppresses a digital signature through cryptographic keys. If <b>Autoverschlüsseln</b> is requested, this option is ignored.
[Verschlüsselt]	Force Encryption: Forces email encryption using

Subject flag	Triggered action
	cryptographic keys. If <b>Autoverschlüsseln</b> is requested, this option is ignored.
[Unverschlüsselt]	Suppress encryption: Suppresses email encryption through cryptographic keys. If <b>Autoverschlüsseln</b> is requested, this option is ignored.
[PDF]	PDF conversion: Converts the entire email content into a PDF document.
[AP]	Attachment Password: Protects all attachments with a password that must be entered by the recipient before downloading the attachments. This feature is available in NoSpamProxy Large Files.

## Customising subject flags

You can customize subject flags to your needs and reset them to their default values at any time.

PDF-Verschlüsselungspasswort

PDF-Verschlüsselungspasswort

Betreffkennzeichnungen können genutzt werden um die Verarbeitung von ausgehenden E-Mails zu kontrollieren. Sie können diese Kennzeichnungen in die Betreffzeile einfügen. Geben Sie an, wie Sie diese Betreffkennzeichnung über die Betreffzeile einer E-Mail steuern möchten.

☒ Benutze den Standardnamen **PW**

☐ Nutze einen alternativen Namen

Name

Die Zeichen 'A-Z', 'a-z', '0-9' and '\_' sind in der Betreffkennzeichnung erlaubt.

Es wird keine Unterscheidung zwischen Groß- und Kleinbuchstaben gemacht.

Der Header **X-enQsig-SymmetricEncryptionPassword** wird benutzt um die Betreffkennzeichnung zu kontrollieren.

☐ Verwende zusätzlich zu obigem Header den Folgenden

Header-Name

Speichern und schließen Abbrechen und schließen



**WARNING:** In the NoSpamProxy Outlook Add-in you can configure the subject flags to be used instead of the X headers. In this case, do not make any changes in this area. Otherwise, the add-in will no longer work.

## Particularities when automatically sending emails

When sending emails automatically, you can also use email headers instead of subject flags.

Proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Configuration > Advanced settings > Subject flags**.
2. Open the desired subject flag.
3. Check the box **In addition to the header above, also use this header**.
4. Enter the desired header into the input field.
5. Click **Save and close**.

The specified header is now used in addition to the regular header.

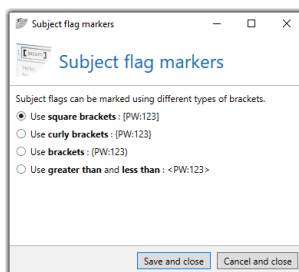
## NoSpamProxy Outlook Add-in

You can also install the Outlook Add-In for NoSpamProxy instead of the subject flags. The Outlook Add-in is used with Microsoft Outlook instead of the subject flags.

## Customising markers for subject flags

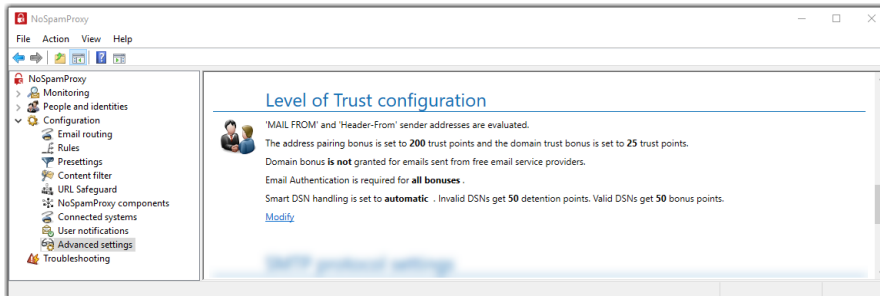
By default, square brackets are used to indicate the subject flags. To change this, proceed as follows:

1. Go to **Configuration > Advanced settings > Subject flags**.
2. Click **Modify**.



3. Select the desired marker type.
4. Click **Save and close**.

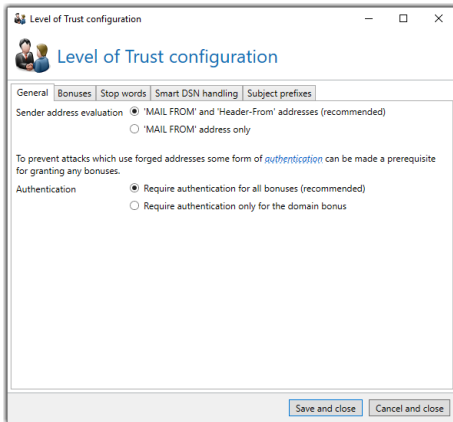
## Level of trust configuration



To configure Level of Trust, proceed as follows:

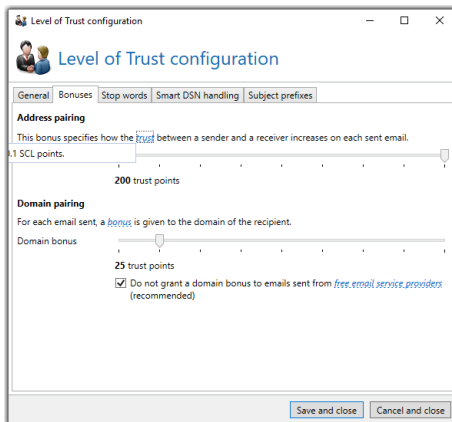
1. Go to **Configuration > Advanced settings > Level of Trust configuration**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Make the settings on the individual tabs (see below).
4. Click **Save and close**.

## General tab



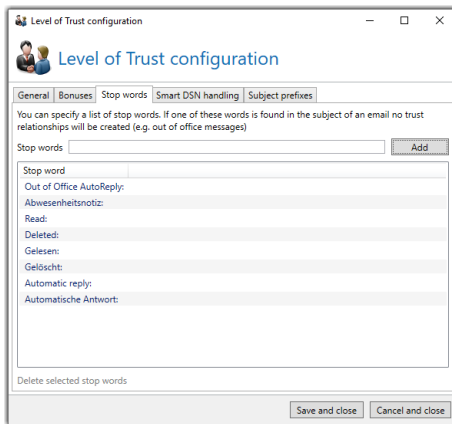
- **Behaviour for trusted emails**| Determines whether emails to local addresses with a sufficiently high level of trust are marked as trustworthy and the filters configured in a rule are skipped. Only actions can then prevent the acceptance of the email.
- **Sender address evaluation**| Determines which addresses are used for the analysis if the **MAIL FROM** address and the **Header-From** address are different from each other. If both addresses are verified, the email will be rejected if either address is not trustworthy.
- **Authentication**| Determines whether successful authentication through DKIM, S/MIME and SPF checks is a prerequisite for all bonuses or only for the domain bonus (see **Bonuses** tab).

## Bonuses tab



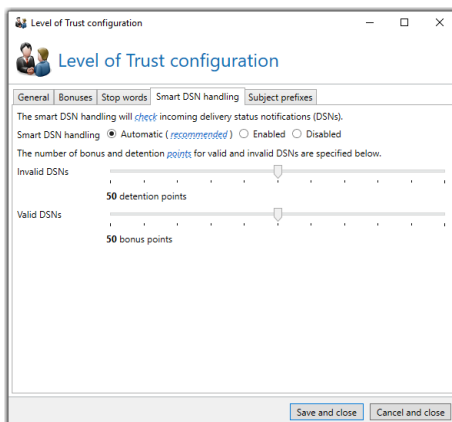
- **Address pairing**| Determines by how many points the trust between a sender and a recipient is increased per email. With the slider you can set a value between 0 and 200. One point corresponds to (-0.1) points for the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)**. For each email to external addresses, not only the so-called address relationship bonus is increased, but also a bonus for the respective recipient domain.
- **Domain pairing**| Determines how many points the domain bonus is increased by. This value should be smaller than the bonus for address relationships. You can set a value between 0 and 200 with the slider. One point corresponds to (-0.1) points for the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)**.

## Stop words tab



Once the Gateway Role finds any of the words defined here in the subject of an email to external addresses, both the address relationship bonus and the domain bonus remain unchanged and are not increased. This is a useful setting for automatically generated emails such as out-of-office notes.

## Smart DSN handling tab



Smart DSN handling checks Delivery Status Notifications (DSNs) to local addresses. Since NoSpamProxy knows which emails have been sent from the company, it can also determine whether a corresponding email has left the company for the DSN that is currently available.

- **Smart DSN handling**| Determines if and how intelligent DSN filtering applied.
- **Automatic**| NoSpamProxy first checks whether there are any elements in the Level of Trust database that are older than seven days. Only then does NoSpamProxy evaluate inbound DSNs.
- **Enabled**| NoSpamProxy evaluates the DSN in every case; even if no data records exist in the Level of Trust database.
- **Disabled**| The intelligent DSN filtering is disabled.

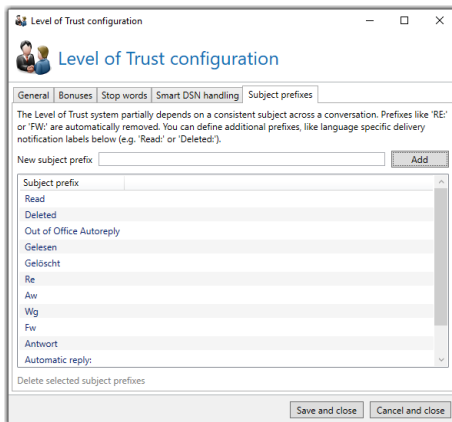
**EXAMPLE:**

A DSN arrives and NoSpamProxy determines that the original message for that DSN was sent from **schmidt@example.com** to **schulze@netatwork.de**. NoSpamProxy now checks whether there is an address pair **schmidt@example.com/schulze@netatwork.de** in the Level of Trust database.

If this is not the case, the DSN in question may not be valid and receives penalty points. If a suitable address pair is found, the DSN receives bonus points. For this analysis to take place, two conditions must be met:

- There must be an RFC-compliant DSN. This means that the original message is attached to the DSN so that NoSpamProxy can determine the original address pair.
- It must be ensured that the mail gateway knows all emails to external addresses. In networks with distributed Internet connections, this can be a problem under certain circumstances.

## Subject flags tab



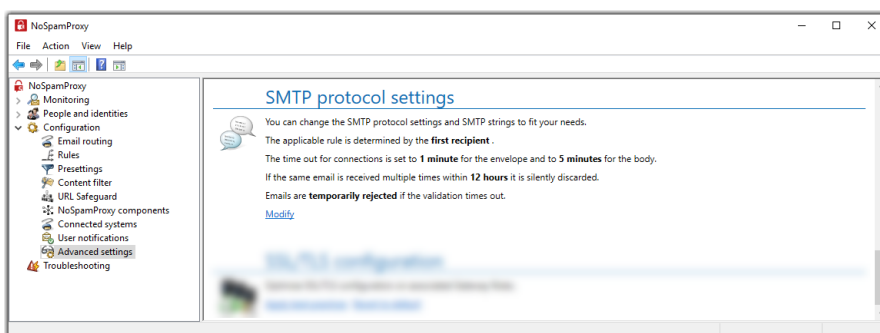
Level of Trust partially requires consistent subject lines over a conversation. Subject prefixes such as **RE:** or **FW:** must be removed for this purpose. Here you configure all prefixes used by your email system.

## See

### Level of Trust

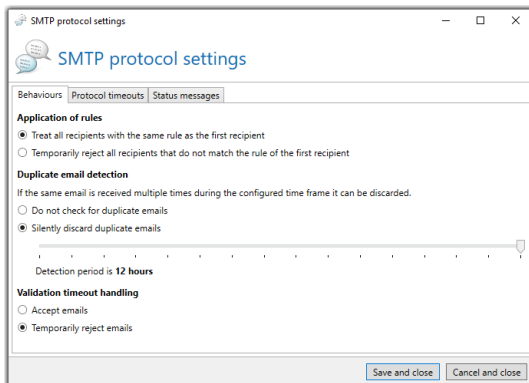
### Points allocation for domains for Level of Trust

## SMTP protocol settings



The protocol settings control the behaviour when receiving emails, the SMTP timeouts and the SMTP status messages.

## Behaviour tab



## Application of rules

If an email is sent to multiple recipients, different rules may apply to the email. NoSpamProxy can force the sending system to send a separate email for each individual recipient. This setting prevents conflicts caused by emails sent to multiple recipients, e.g. if an email is sent to two recipients via one connection and two different rules would apply.



**NOTE:** By using SMTP, it is not possible to provide independent feedback for individual recipients. Only the entire connection can be terminated.

**Treat all recipients with the same rule as the first recipient|** The rule that applies to the first recipient is applied to all recipients of this email.

**Temporarily reject all recipients that do not match the rule of the first recipient|** All recipients that do not match the rule of the first recipient are temporarily rejected. NoSpamProxy sends the error message **Too many recipients** to the inbound system. A new delivery attempt will be made for the rejected emails. This allows NoSpamProxy to apply the appropriate rule for each recipient. However, the emails are delivered multiple times by the sender.



**NOTE:** This function allows you to control the email assessment. Disadvantages are multiple transmissions and not fully RFC-compliant behavior.

## Duplicate email detection

NoSpamProxy recognises if the same email is received multiple times. Sending the same email repeatedly usually occurs due to incorrect configuration such as email loops. You can set whether these emails should be discarded or not, as well as the time frame for the detection.

**Do not check for duplicate emails|** There is no check for duplicate emails.

**Silently discard duplicate emails|** Duplicate emails received within the configured time period are silently discarded.

## Validation timeout handling

You can determine how emails whose validation time exceeds the maximum values configured under Protocol timeouts are handled.

**Accept emails** | E-mails whose validation time exceeds the maximum values are accepted.

**Temporarily reject emails** | Emails whose validation time exceeds the maximum values are temporarily rejected.

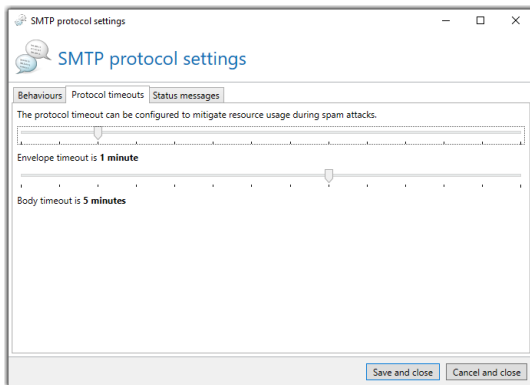


**NOTE:** If the malware scan is not completed when a validation timeout occurs, the respective email will always be temporarily rejected.



**NOTE:** Emails are rejected in any case if they were previously rejected temporarily or permanently by an action.

## Protocol timeouts tab



**NOTE:** Adjusting the timeouts has a major impact on the resource requirements of your server during heavy email traffic.

In the SMTP protocol timeout settings section you can specify when NoSpamProxy disconnects in case of no activity. This is configured for two sections within the SMTP protocol.

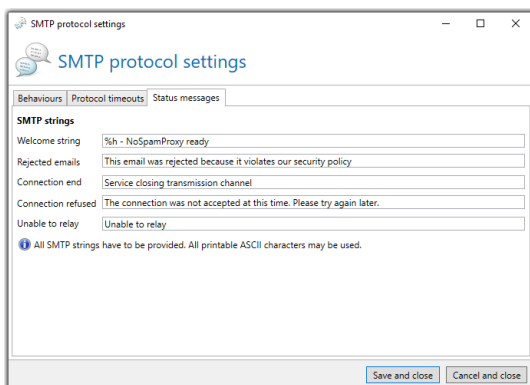
**Envelope timeout** | Defines the timeout for the commands within the so-called envelope. This affects all commands up to the DATA command (HELO/EHLO, MAIL FROM, RCPT TO).

**Body timeout** | As soon as the DATA command has been sent, the setting under **Body timeout** applies.



**NOTE:** It makes sense to separate the timeouts, since timeouts can occur more frequently than with the envelope when the body part is transferred by means of filters and actions connected in between. This is transmitted very promptly and smoothly during a normal transmission. A longer waiting time in this part of the email transfer rather indicates a DoS attack or similar. Therefore you have the possibility to reduce the timeout of the envelope part in case of emergency.

## Status messages tab



The status messages determine which texts (SMTP strings) NoSpamProxy sends to other servers. The SMTP replies are standard specifications in the SMTP handshake, which are usually not visible to the normal user. Nevertheless, it may be useful to change the information as required. This can assist administrators with troubleshooting and analysis.

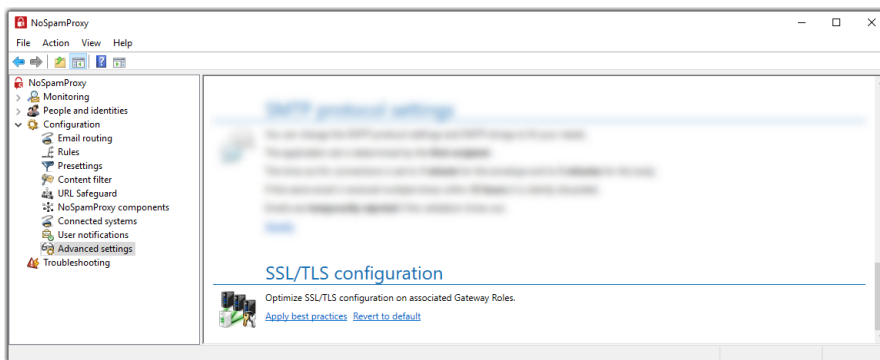
The messages Rejected emails and Blacklisted address are for example important information for the sender of a blocked email.

- To change a message, click in the corresponding input field and change the text.



**NOTE:** You must not use umlauts for SMTP messages. Umlauts are not supported by the SMTP protocol used.

## SSL/TLS configuration



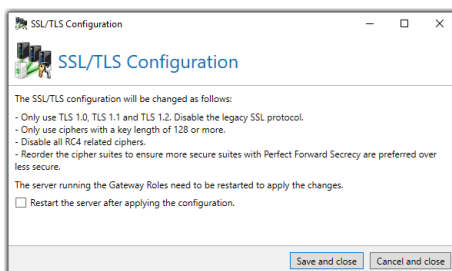
With transport encryption, the connection is secured via SSL or TLS. The Gateway Role accesses the operating system. Its settings are used for connections.



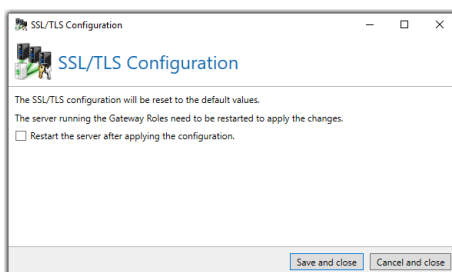
**NOTE:** Recently, some encryption methods (e.g. DES or RC4) have proven to be unsafe. It is therefore advisable to deactivate them. Some cipher suites support a procedure called Perfect Forward Secrecy. In short, this prevents the contents of connections from possibly being decrypted by unauthorized third parties, even if the private key of the server certificate is known. By default, Windows does not use these methods preferentially.

## Adjusting SSL/TLS configuration

You can apply the recommended settings here in the interface. For the changes to take effect, the server must be restarted:



You can also use this section to restore the default values of Windows:





**NOTE:** This is a system-wide change which may also affect other applications.

# Troubleshooting

Overview

Monitoring

Identities

Configuration

Troubleshooting

Actions

Refresh

English

Log settings

Logging can be enabled to troubleshoot unexpected behaviour.

Role	Active logs	Log location	Collect emails	Auto disable log
Gateway Role INSTALLATION	0	C:\Windows\ServiceProfiles\LocalService\AppData\Local\Temp\	No	
Intranet Role	0	C:\Windows\ServiceProfiles\NetworkService\AppData\Local\Temp\		

Modify

Blocked IP addresses

The blocked hosts table contains a list of host addresses which have been identified as spam sources.

[Clear blocked addresses](#)

Fix permissions

Database and file system permissions can be reset automatically.

Name
Intranet Role
Gateway Role INSTALLATION

[Fix database permissions](#) [Fix file system permissions](#)

Web Portal security

Web Portal security can be fixed for all connected Web Portals.

Role	Status
https://installation/enQsig	✓ Everything is fine

Fix Web Portal security key

This area provides access to tools to create activity logs or even a new database for the individual roles of NoSpamProxy. It may be necessary to create a new database if the old database has been damaged.

Log settings	326
--------------	-----

<b>Blocked IP addresses .....</b>	<b>328</b>
<b>Fixing permissions .....</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>Web Portal Security .....</b>	<b>330</b>



# Log settings

To change the log settings for the respective Gateway or Intranet Role, proceed as follows:

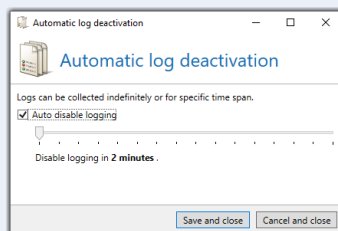
1. Go to **Troubleshooting > Log settings**.
2. Select the desired role.
3. Click **Modify**.
4. Make the desired settings (see below).
5. Click **Save and close**.

## Log settings tab

- **Log path**| The location for the log files.
- **Log categories**| The categories for which you want to enable logging.



**NOTE:** Depending on the categories you select here, the log files can very quickly grow to several hundred megabytes in size. Select a drive for the files that has enough available disk space. We recommend that you create the log only for a fixed period of time. To do this, click **Change** and make the desired setting.



## Debug settings tab

You can save all emails to disk before and after processing by NoSpamProxy.

- **Storage location**| The storage location for emails as an absolute path on the Gateway Role.



**NOTE:** Storing all emails on the hard disk takes up a lot of space and can cause severe performance degradation of the server. Therefore, use this function only for error diagnosis and switch it off again afterwards.

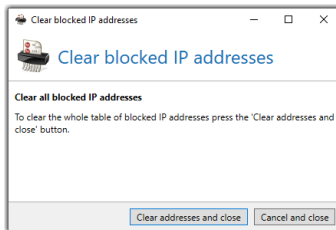


**NOTE:** This tab is only available for Gateway Roles.

# Blocked IP addresses

NoSpamProxy blocks the sending gateway for 30 minutes by default after receiving a spam emails. If by mistake a trustworthy IP address is added to this blacklist, you can delete the list of blocked servers here.

1. Go to **Troubleshooting > Blocked IP Addresses**.
2. Click **Clear blocked addresses**.
3. Click **Clear addresses and close**.

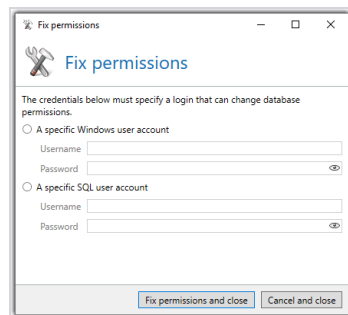


# Fixing permissions

If the file system permissions for NoSpamProxy have been changed by third-party programs, for example, so that the function is restricted, you can correct this here.

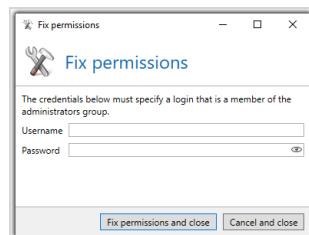
1. Go to **Troubleshooting > Fix permissions**.
2. Select the desired role.
3. Click either **Fix database permission** or **Fix file system permission**.

## ■ Fixing the database



The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Fix permissions". It has a header bar with a wrench icon and the text "Fix permissions". Below the header, there is a message: "The credentials below must specify a login that can change database permissions." There are two radio button options: "A specific Windows user account" and "A specific SQL user account". Each option has fields for "Username" and "Password". The "A specific Windows user account" option is selected. At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Fix permissions and close" and "Cancel and close".

## ■ Fixing file system



The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Fix permissions". It has a header bar with a wrench icon and the text "Fix permissions". Below the header, there is a message: "The credentials below must specify a login that is a member of the administrators group." There are two radio button options: "A specific Windows user account" and "A specific SQL user account". Each option has fields for "Username" and "Password". The "A specific Windows user account" option is selected. At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Fix permissions and close" and "Cancel and close".

4. Make the desired changes.
5. Click **Fix permissions and close**.

# Web Portal Security

For the security of all installed Web Portals, certain information must be kept synchronous. If you are using several Web Portals, this information must be synchronized after installing the second Web Portal. Such an incident is displayed on the overview page. Additionally you can see here which portal this concerns.

To correct the security keys, proceed as follows:

- Select all Web Portals that display the text **The security key is incorrect** and click **Fix Web Portal security key**.



**NOTE:** As long as the keys are not in sync, the forms on the Web Portal will show errors and their function will be impaired.

# Disclaimer

---



This feature is available if you have purchased a corresponding licence.

With NoSpamProxy Disclaimer you can automatically integrate email disclaimers into your emails according to previously defined rules. To be able to include disclaimers in your emails, you must configure NoSpamProxy in three simple steps:

Preparing placeholders for use in disclaimer templates

Setting up templates and rules

Applying disclaimers

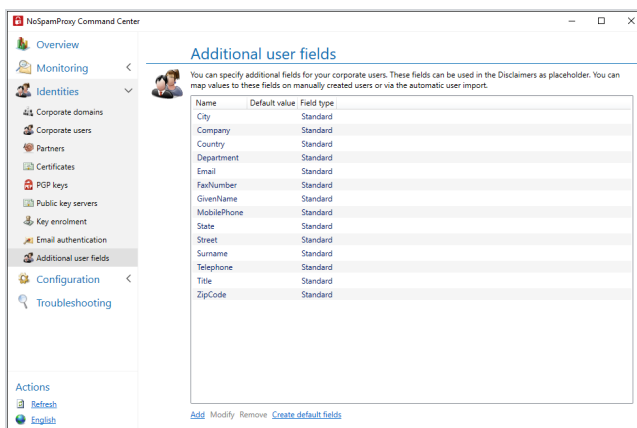
- Preparing placeholders for use in disclaimer templates ..... 332**
- Setting up templates and rules ..... 335**
  - Creating templates ..... 335
  - Adding a template ..... 335
  - Options in the toolbar (HTML view) ..... 336
  - Adding default templates ..... 338
  - Adding a rule ..... 338
  - Changing the order of the rules ..... 340
- Applying disclaimers ..... 341**
- Changing the SSL Certificate ..... 342**

# Preparing placeholders for use in disclaimer templates

Before you can create placeholders, you must create additional user fields. Only then can you use placeholders in the disclaimer templates, because the placeholders are replaced by the values set in the user fields. See [Adding additional user fields](#), [Creating templates](#).

## Creating additional user fields globally

1. Go to **Identities > Additional user fields > Additional user fields**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Create the required fields and define default values for the individual fields if required.



**TIP:**

For most applications, it is recommended to select **Create default fields**. This creates frequently used fields. When the fields are created, the user fields are automatically assigned to Active Directory fields. You can adjust this assignment manually later.

**Default values** are used if the user is not assigned their own values. In the field for the telephone number, for example, the number of the head office can be entered, in the field for the email address the email address of the head office.

See [Automating the user import](#).

**NOTE:**

- Placeholders based on custom user fields are represented in the template editor with an asterisk (\*), for example **[\*CustomUserField]**. Exceptions are placeholders in templates created with NoSpamProxy version 13.2 or smaller.
- Placeholders based on custom user fields are not localised.

## Creating additional user fields during user import

When importing from an Active Directory or a generic LDAP directory, you can fill additional user fields with values from the configured directory. This is useful if you want to personalize Disclaimer templates for your users.

1. Go to **Identities > Additional user fields > Additional user fields**.
2. Create your own fields or default user fields.
3. Legen Sie während des Benutzerimports fest, aus welchem Feld des Verzeichnisses die Daten übernommen werden sollen.



**NOTE:** Für jedes Feld können sie entweder einen Wert aus dem Active Directory zuordnen oder den Standardwert des Feldes übernehmen. Die Werte, die Sie im Active-Directory-Benutzerimport zugeordnet haben, stehen erst beim nächsten Durchlauf dieses Benutzerimports zur Verfügung.

# Setting up templates and rules

A **template** determines the HTML and plain text content of a disclaimer, a **rule** determines when and how a template is added to an email.

- On the NoSpamProxy Command Center overview page, click **Open Disclaimer Web Page**.

## Creating templates

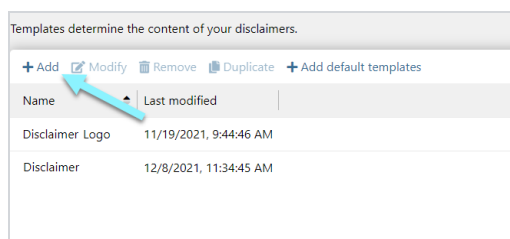
### Adding a rule

## | Creating templates

Templates determine the content of your disclaimers.

## | Adding a template

1. Go to **Disclaimer > Disclaimer Templates**.
2. Click **Add** to add a new template.



3. Enter a name for the new template under **General** and click **Next**.
4. Add HTML content and click Next.
5. Add text-only content.
6. Click **Finish**.

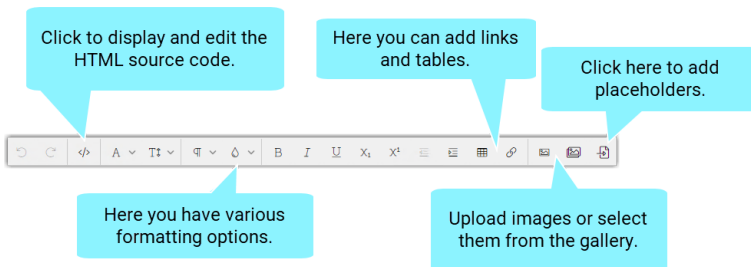
In HTML view, you can then use the toolbar and the other buttons to add elements such as placeholders or graphics to the disclaimer. You can also add free text, e.g. a salutation.



**NOTE:** Email clients use plain text view when HTML viewing is disabled. Here you can only insert placeholders and plain text.

## Options in the toolbar (HTML view)

The function of the toolbar is based on comparable toolbars in Office products.



**TIP:** Before you can insert placeholders, you must create additional user fields. See [Adding additional user fields](#), [Preparing placeholders for use in disclaimer templates](#).

**NOTE:**

- Placeholders based on custom user fields are represented in the template editor with an asterisk (\*), for example **[\*CustomUserField]**. Exceptions are placeholders in templates created with NoSpamProxy version 13.2 or smaller.
- Placeholders based on custom user fields are not localised.

## Available placeholders

Placeholders will be replaced by the values assigned to the respective user profile attribute in your Azure Active Directory.

The following placeholders are available:

Placeholder	User Profile Attribute in Azure Active Directory
Department	Department
State	State
Email	Mail
Fax number	FaxNumber
Company	CompanyName
Country	Country
Mobile phone	MobilePhone
Surname	Surname

Placeholder	User Profile Attribute in Azure Active Directory
Zip code	PostalCode
City	City
Street	StreetAddress
Telephone	BusinessPhones
Title	JobTitle
Given name	GivenName

## Adding default templates

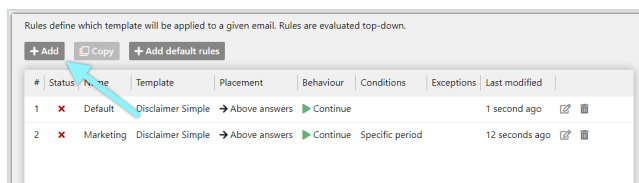
Default templates contain a selection of frequently used placeholders, but can be freely edited just like newly created templates.

- Click **Add default templates** to add them.

## Adding a rule

Rules determine when and how disclaimers are inserted into your emails.

1. Go to **Disclaimer > Disclaimer Rules** to open the rules overview page.
2. Click **Add** to add a new rule.



3. Make the desired settings (see below).
4. Click **Finish** to save the changes made and return to the rules overview.

## General

---

Here you make basic settings for the new rule.

The screenshot shows the 'Rule New rule' configuration form. It includes the following fields and callouts:

- Name:** A text field containing 'New rule'. Callout: 'Switches the rule on or off.'
- Status:** Radio buttons for 'Enabled' (selected) and 'Disabled'. Callout: 'Determines the order in which the rules are applied.'
- Index:** A text field containing '3'. Callout: 'The template that will be inserted into the email.'
- Template to use:** A dropdown menu with 'Select' as the current option. Callout: 'The position within the email.'
- Placement in email:** A text field containing 'Before any previous answer'. Callout: 'The position within the email.'
- Subsequent rules:** Radio buttons for 'Continue with the next rule' (selected) and 'Stop processing after this rule'. Callout: 'Determines whether another rule is applied after this one.'
- Buttons:** 'Back', 'Next', and 'Cancel' at the bottom right.



**TIP:** With an email disclaimer for inbound emails, for example, you can mark all emails that originate from the Internet.

## Conditions

---

A rule is applied when **all** conditions are met.

**With specific words (multiple options)** | The condition is fulfilled if one or more of the defined words are present.

**In the specified date span** | The condition is fulfilled in the specified period of time.

## Ausnahmen

---

A rule is applied if **none of the** exceptions apply.

**With specific words (multiple options)**| The exception applies if one or more of the defined words are present.

**In the specified date span**| The condition is fulfilled in the specified period of time.

## **|** Changing the order of the rules

To change the order (index) of the rules, proceed as follows:

1. Select the rule whose index you want to change.
2. Click **Reorder**.
3. Move the rule by clicking either **Move up** or **Move down**.
4. Click **Save**.

# Applying disclaimers

You add the **Apply disclaimer** action to a NoSpamProxy rule. The action adds a disclaimer to outbound emails. For this purpose, the rules and templates created on the disclaimer website are analysed.

1. In the NoSpamProxy Command Center, go to **Configuration > Rules**.
2. Open a rule for outbound emails.
3. Switch to the **Actions** tab.
4. Click **Add**, and in the **Add action** dialog box, select the **Apply disclaimer** action.
5. Click **Select and close** and in the next dialog box click **Next**.

Your configured disclaimer rules and templates are applied to this NoSpamProxy rule.

# Changing the SSL Certificate

You can use a custom SSL certificate to secure the management website of the Disclaimer. To do this, the desired certificate with the private key must be stored in the certificate store of the computer account on the Intranet Role under **Personal certificates**.

In the [training](#) video for integrating your own TLS certificate, this is explained for the Gateway Role, among other things. However, the manual rights adjustment for the Intranet Role is not necessary, this is accomplished by the PowerShell cmdlet shown below.

If the certificate is located in the certificate store on the Intranet Role, run PowerShell as local administrator. Then execute the following command:

```
Set-NspWebApiConfiguration -ShowCertificateSelectorUI
```

A window will now open showing you the available certificates. Select the desired certificate and confirm your selection. Now restart the Intranet Role and your certificate will be active on the Disclaimer website.

# Annex

---

<b>Filters in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>344</b>
<b>Filters available in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>347</b>
<b>Actions in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>371</b>
<b>Actions available in NoSpamProxy .....</b>	<b>372</b>
<b>Basic concepts .....</b>	<b>416</b>

# Filters in NoSpamProxy

Filters evaluate emails and thus influence the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)** of the emails. The SCL determines whether emails are rejected if the inspection result exceeds a certain SCL.

## I How do filters work?

The filters do the actual work when inspecting emails. They assess how well the email meets a certain filter criterion and award points for this. You can set up your own set of rules with completely different filter combinations and restrict the rules to certain senders and recipients. This allows you to react very individually and flexibly to spam attacks.

For example, if you use a word filter, the phrase *Viagra* is very likely to be on your block list. For a pharmaceutical company, however, this expression is only a spam criterion to a very limited extent. If an email otherwise appears legitimate or comes from a known email sender, the occurrence of the suspicious word may be acceptable under certain circumstances. For each email, the individual filters of the applicable rule are executed. The filters award penalty and bonus points for the email to be inspected. These points are weighted with the multiplier of the filters and then added to a total value. If this value exceeds the set Spam Confidence Level (SCL) of the rule, the email will be rejected. You can set the threshold value individually for each rule.

## Example of a filter configuration

You set a word filter that blocks emails with Viagra ads. For a pharmaceutical company, however, this expression is only a spam criterion to a very limited extent. With NoSpamProxy Protection you can decide for yourself whether you want to include **Viagra** in the word filter or whether you want to use a word filter at all and if so, how strongly you weight it with the multiplier. If an email otherwise appears legitimate or comes from a known email sender, the occurrence of the suspicious word may be acceptable under certain circumstances. You can also specify that the rule with the word filter applies only to specific IP addresses or recipients; for example, only to senders with a specific TLD (Top Level Domain) or IP addresses from a specific subnet.

Position	Rule name	From	To	Action
1	General	*	john.doe@example.com	
2	Japan	*.jp	john.doe@example.com	

- Rule 1, which we call "General" here, is defined to all emails addressed to john.doe@example.com.
- Rule 2 with the name "Japan" on position 2 is also defined to recipient john.doe@example.com, but only considers senders from Japan.

Both rules apply to emails from Japan to "john.doe". However, only the "General" rule is used for evaluation because it is at the top of the list. Even if the Japan rule would actually be "more precise" - the order is the decisive criterion. To apply the "Japan" rule, the order of the rule must be changed as indicated below. This causes the more specific rule to be applied first.

Position	Rule name	From	To	Action
1	Japan	*.jp	john.doe@example.com	
2	General	*	john.doe@example.com	

# Filters available in NoSpamProxy

- Core Antispam Engine Filter
- CSA Certified IP List
- Allowed Unicode language planes
- 32Guards
- Realtime block lists
- Reputation filter
- SpamAssassin connector
- Spam URI Realtime Blocklists
- Word matching

## Core Antispam Engine Filter



**NOTE:** This filter is available if NoSpamProxy Protection is licensed.



This filter is valid for the following senders: External. The default SCL value for a single multiplier is 4.

This filter creates a fingerprint of the email to be checked based on defined criteria and compares it with the already known fingerprints. If the fingerprint is known, NoSpamProxy awards 4 SCL points. NoSpamProxy will thus already reject the

email with the default settings. The filter itself has no further setting options. The administrator can only exert further influence on the filter result by weighting with multipliers.

## CSA Certified IP List

Many newsletters are desired, as their content is delivered with the consent of the recipient. Often the receipt of such newsletters cannot be guaranteed because no Level of Trust entry has been created. The manual entry of all trustworthy newsletter senders as trusted partners would require too much effort.

This gap is closed by the CSA Certified IP List. It represents a positive list, where a control committee monitors the legality of the newsletters sent. This means that newsletters from senders who are on the CSA Certified IP List can be delivered safely.

If the sender of a received email is on the CSA Certified IP List, the CSA Certified IP List filter marks the email as trusted and assigns negative SCL points. See [Spam Confidence Level \(SCL\)](#).

### Enabling CSA Certified IP List

1. Open a rule for inbound emails.
2. Switch to the **Filters** tab.
3. Click **Add** and select **CSA Certified IP List**.
4. Click **Select and close**.



**NOTE:** You configure the filter under [Connected systems](#).

## Allowed Unicode language planes



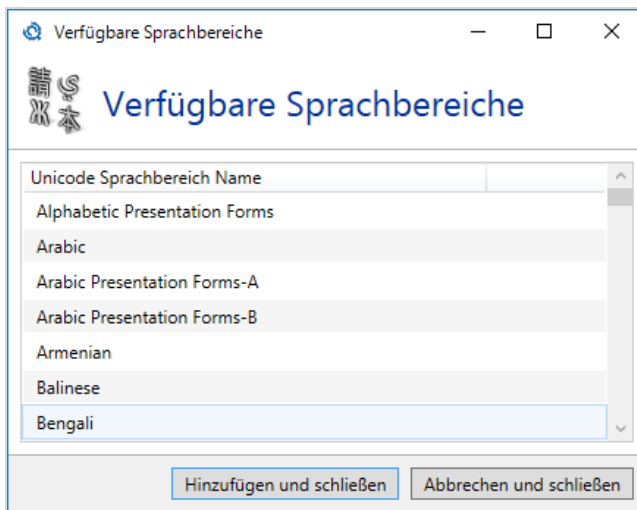
This filter is valid for the following senders: External and Local.  
The default SCL value for a single multiplier is 4.

Spam emails sometimes come from language areas with which one does not usually communicate. For example, spam containing Chinese characters may arrive. This filter blocks emails by analysing all contained character sets and only let the email pass if all contained character sets are explicitly allowed by you.

### Application

1. Add the Allowed Unicode language planes filter to your rule.

2. Now add all language planes that can be used in incoming emails to the allowed language planes.



**TIP:** If you only communicate with Western Europe or America, the language plane for Western European languages is usually sufficient. You can add it to the list **by choosing Add default western European language** plane if it is not already included in the list of allowed languages.

## I 32Guards

32Guards is on the one hand a filter that influences the Spam Confidence Level rating, and on the other hand an action that can directly reject threats temporarily or permanently. See [\*\*32Guards\*\*](#).

## Realtime block lists

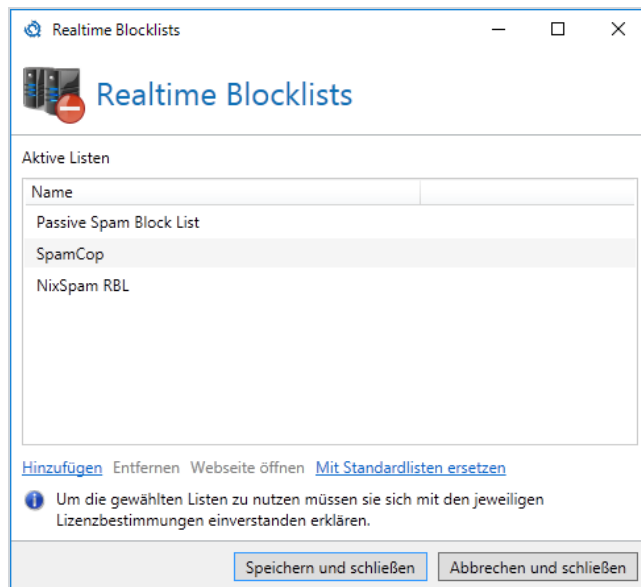


This filter is valid for the following senders: External. The default SCL value with single multiplier depends on the lists selected in the filter. The SCL points set in the list are assigned per hit.

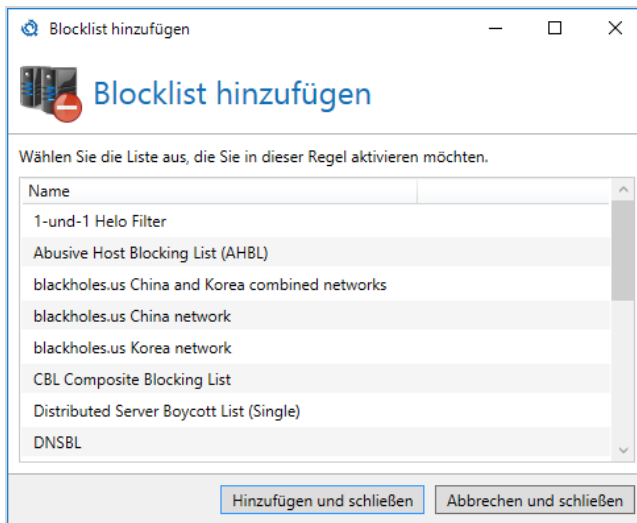
This filter checks whether an address entry exists in realtime block lists. You can select multiple block lists. Since even the best lists can contain false positives, you should always use several lists. Since every hit is counted as a penalty point, the risk of emails being blocked by a false positive based on a single blacklist is minimised.

### Application

1. Add the filter to your rule  
The configuration dialog opens.
2. Click **Add**.



3. Select one or more lists that you want to activate.



4. Click **Add and close**.
5. Click **Save and close**.



**TIP:** Click **Replace with default set** to replace the currently selected lists with the lists recommended by Net at Work.

## Removing lists

- To remove one or more lists, select the entries to be deleted and click **Remove**.



**NOTE:** Removed lists are only removed from the rule currently edited. The lists still appear in the global rule settings.



**NOTE:** For the DNS queries to work correctly, you must configure the DNS settings of the operating system appropriately. The server must be able to resolve external domains. It can be useful to install your own DNS server as a forwarder.

## Reputation filter

This filter performs various checks on the email envelope, the content of the email and the headers. Some of the checks also analyse DKIM (DomainKeys Identified Mail) and SPF (Sender Policy Framework). Depending on the results of the individual tests, SCL points can be assigned, which can be configured individually. This allows you to adapt the assessments to the requirements of your company.

Title	Description
Unsecured connection	Checks if the inbound connection is secured by TLS. TLS encryption guarantees that both meta and content data are exchanged in encrypted form between the email client and the server or between different email servers. The General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) prescribes the use of TLS encryption. Since spammers often do not comply with the GDPR, this test allows conclusions to be drawn about the legitimacy of the email.

Title	Description
Missing PTR record	Checks whether the IP address can be resolved back to a hostname. If this is not the case, the cause is a missing PTR entry. PTR (Pointer Resource Records) assign one or more hostnames to an IP address in the

Title	Description
	<p>DNS. If this assignment is not possible, this indicates an attempt at misuse.</p>
<p>Suspected dynamic address</p>	<p>Checks whether the hostname associated with the IP address includes the IP address in text form. NoSpamProxy checks whether the IP address originates from a dynamic IP address range.</p> <p>This often occurs with infected computers acting as spambots.</p>
<p>Reverse lookup failed</p>	<p>Checks whether the hostname associated with the IP address of the email server can be resolved back to this IP address in a 'reverse lookup'. If this is not possible, this indicates spoofing, since it is highly likely that the actual identity of the host is to be concealed.</p>
<p>Missing IP address</p>	<p>Checks whether the 'MAIL FROM' domain can be resolved to an IP address. If this is not possible, this indicates an attempt at misuse, as the domain in question most probably does not exist.</p>

Title	Description
SPF failed	Checks whether a valid SPF record exists. Checks whether the IP address of the email server is stored in the DNS as an authorised MTA (Mail Transfer Agent), i.e. whether it is allowed to send emails for this domain. This test only awards points if no DMARC policy (see below) is active.
DKIM failed	<p>Performs DKIM checks for the respective email. These checks consist of verification of the header signature and the hash calculated from the body of the email, which is also signed. The sender's public key is stored in the DNS.</p> <p>This test only awards points if no DMARC policy (see below) is active.</p>
DMARC result 'quarantine'	The mode 'quarantine' is defined in the DMARC policy of the sender for the case of a failed check. The DMARC examination also includes the so-called 'alignment' between


Title	Description
	<p>the domains examined by DKIM and SPF.</p> <p>The amount of points awarded depends on the DMARC result applied.</p>
DMARC result 'reject'	<p>In the DMARC policy of the sender, the mode 'reject' is defined for the case of a failed check. The DMARC examination also includes the so-called 'alignment' between the domains examined by DKIM and SPF.</p> <p>The amount of points awarded depends on the DMARC result applied.</p>
Address is not aligned	<p>Checks whether the 'MAIL FROM' domain and 'Header-From' domain are identical ('alignment'). This test only awards points if no DMARC policy is active.</p>



**NOTE:** If one or more DMARC-type checks, i.e. SPF, DKIM or DMARC fail, this result is overwritten by an intact ARC control chain. In such a case, no penalty points are awarded which would increase the **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)**. See **Trusted ARC signers**.

Title	Description
Invalid angle brackets	<p>Checks if the 'header-from' contains an angle bracket with an invalid email address, which is not RFC compliant.</p> <p>Lack of RFC compliance indicates spam, as spammers may be less concerned with ensuring such compliance.</p>
Missing sender	<p>Checks if the 'MAIL FROM' is empty and the 'Header-From' contains a valid email address. If this is not the case, this indicates NDR backscatter. Mobile devices and email applications such as Outlook only show the display name, so abuse is not detected.</p>

Title	Description
Corporate domain in email address	<p>Checks whether the email address specified in the header form contains a corporate domain. If this is the case, it indicates identity theft, since this test can only be used for inbound emails and therefore it must be an external email.</p> <p>Note that such a case can also occur if an external email system sends on behalf of the corporate domain but is not configured as <b><u>Adding corporate email servers</u></b>.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> &lt;xyz@netatwork.de&gt;</p>

Title	Description
	 <b>NOTE:</b> A valid DKIM signature for the 'Header-From' domain overrides this filter by default so that no penalty points are awarded. To prevent this behaviour, please refer to the information under <u><b>Aufheben der DKIM-Signatur im Reputationsfilter.</b></u>
Corporate domain in display name	Checks if the display name contains an email address that includes a corporate domain. Email addresses that include corporate domain are used by spammers as part of display names, as this is the only name that initially appears in many mobile devices and email programs. The sender can thus pretend a false identity.

Title	Description
	<p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> "Uwe Ulbrich uwe.ulbrich@netatwork.de" &lt;spam@spammer.de&gt;</p>
<p>Subdomain of a corporate domain in email address</p>	<p>Checks whether a subdomain of a corporate domain is in use. If this subdomain is legitimate, the filter 'Corporate domain in email address' is applied.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> &lt;xyz@hr.netatwork.de&gt;</p>
<p>Subdomain of a corporate domain in display name</p>	<p>Checks if the display name contains a subdomain of a corporate domain. Domains in the display name are used by spammers because many mobile devices and email applications initially display only this name. The sender can thus pretend a false identity.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> "hr.netatwork.de" &lt;spam@spammer.de&gt;</p>

Title	Description
Obfuscated corporate domain in email address	<p>See filter 'Corporate domain in email address'. In addition, it is checked here whether ASCII characters were used in the domain that look similar to certain letters.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> &lt;xyz@n3tatw0rk.de&gt;</p>
Obfuscated corporate domain in display name.	<p>See test 'Corporate domain in display name'. In addition, it is checked here whether ASCII characters were used in the domain that look similar to certain letters. Domains in the display name are used by spammers because many mobile devices and email applications initially display only this name.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> "Uwe Ulbrich uwe.ulbrich@n3tatw0rk.de" &lt;spam@spammer.de&gt;</p>
Subdomain of an obfuscated corporate domain in email address	<p>See test 'Subdomain of a corporate domain in email address'. In</p>

Title	Description
	<p>addition, it is checked here whether ASCII characters were used in the domain that look similar to certain letters.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> &lt;xyz@hr.netatwork.de&gt;</p>
<p>Subdomain of an obfuscated corporate domain in display name</p>	<p>See test 'Subdomain of a corporate domain in display name'. In addition, it is checked here whether ASCII characters were used in the domain that look similar to certain letters. Domains in the display name are used by spammers because many mobile devices and email applications initially display only this name.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> Uwe Ulbrich uwe.ulbrich@hr.n3tatw0rk.de" &lt;spam@spammer.de&gt;</p>
<p>Multiple email addresses</p>	<p>Checks whether the 'Header-From' contains more than one email</p>

Title	Description
	<p>address, which is not RFC compliant.</p> <p>Lack of RFC compliance indicates spam, as spammers may be less concerned with ensuring such compliance.</p>
Domain in display name different from email address	<p>Checks if a domain specified in the display name of the header-from is different from the domain that is part of the header-from email address. Domains in the display name are used by spammers because many mobile devices and email applications initially display only this name.</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b></p> <p>"service@paypal.com"</p> <p>&lt;spam@spammer.de&gt;</p>

Title	Description
Invalid '@'	<p>Checks if the 'Header-To' contains an '@' character that is not part of an email address,</p>

Title	Description
	<p>which is not compliant with RFC 5322.</p> <p>Lack of RFC compliance indicates spam, as spammers may be less concerned with ensuring such compliance.</p>
Invalid angle brackets	<p>Checks if the 'Header-To' contains angle brackets with an invalid email address, which is not compliant with RFC 5322.</p> <p>Lack of RFC compliance indicates spam, as spammers may be less concerned with ensuring such compliance.</p>
Missing 'Header-To'	<p>Checks whether the 'Header-To' contains a specification or is present at all. If this is not the case, the recipient cannot be determined. In this case, information on the recipient can only be found in the 'Bcc' field.</p>
Missing corporate email address	<p>Checks whether the 'Header-To' or the 'CC' contains a corporate email address. In this case, information on the recipient can only be found in the</p>

Title	Description
	'Bcc' field.

## SpamAssassin connector



This filter is valid for the following senders: External and Local. The default SCL value at single multiplier depends on the return value of the SpamAssassin daemon.

SpamAssassin is a free spam filter that includes several predefined tests to classify messages. Many of these tests, such as RBL, NoSpamProxy Protection itself executes much earlier and more effectively. Nevertheless, it can be beneficial to integrate the other rules of this filter. SpamAssassin assesses a message and writes the result in the message header.

It consists of server (SpamD) and client (SpamC). The NoSpamProxy Protection filter acts as a SpamAssassin Client (SpamC) and only works in conjunction with a SpamAssassin Daemon (SpamD). You can install the SpamAssassin Daemon on a system of your choice. This can be a UNIX or Windows system. Operation directly on the same server as NoSpamProxy is also possible.



**NOTE:** Make sure that NoSpamProxy can also reach the requested system. Often port filters, IP routing and firewalls have to be configured.

## Spam URI Realtime Blocklists



This filter is valid for the following senders: External and Local. The default SCL value with single multiplier depends on the lists selected in the filter. 2 SCL points are awarded per hit in a list.

Spam URI Realtime Blocklists manage lists of suspicious spam URLs. Via the Internet it is possible to check whether or not a URL exists in this list.

The Spam URI Realtime Blocklists Filter analyses links in emails and PDF documents and checks whether there is a corresponding entry in these lists. He also searches for addresses beginning with "www". and not appear as links in emails and PDF documents.



**NOTE:** As with the Realtime Blocklists filter, DNS queries must work correctly. The server must be able to resolve the specified service. It can be useful to install your own DNS server as a forwarder.

Malicious links are assigned to one of the following categories:

- Malware
- PhishingAndFraud
- Compromised
- CriminalActivity
- Botnets
- IllegalSoftware
- ChildAbuseImages

- SpamSites
- ParkedDomains

## Word matching



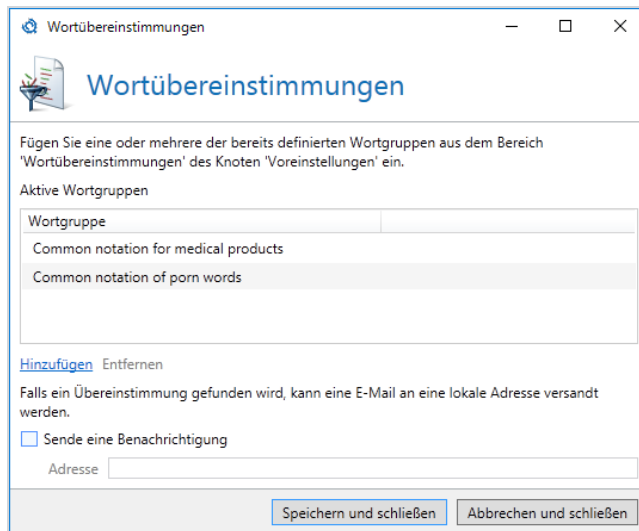
This filter is valid for the following senders: External and Local. The default SCL value with a simple multiplier depends on the word groups selected in the filter. The SCL points set in the word group are awarded per hit.

This filter allows you to recognise previously defined words and phrases in both the subject line and the body of the email and rate them with penalty or bonus SCL points. Each appearance or, depending on the settings, absence of such an expression is awarded with the points set in the filter.

If one or more words from the configured word groups are found in the email, an optional email with a notification can be sent to a local email address. This email will contain the sender of the email, the recipient, subject, and the words found.

## Application

1. Add the filter to your rule The configuration dialog opens.



2. Click **Add**.
3. Select the phrase you want to add and click **Add and close**.
4. **Optional** Specify an email address to which notifications are sent.
5. Click **Save and close**.

## Adding a new word group

1. Go to **Configuration > Presettings > Word matching**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. On the **General** tab, determine
  - the name of the word group,
  - whether points are awarded for matches or for non-matches,
  - the area to which the phrase is applied and

- the SCL points awarded.

**Inhalt der Wortgruppe**

Allgemein Wörter

Name:

Vergebe Punkte: ☒ Für *jede* Übereinstimmung mit der Wortliste  
☐ Falls **keine** Übereinstimmung gefunden wird

Bereich: ☐ Betreffzeile  
☒ E-Mail-Inhalt

Punkte:   
**10 SCL-Punkte**

4. On the **General** tab, determine

- whether you want to search for exact matches (simple) or use wildcards or regular expressions,
- the words contained in the word list and

- whether you also want to search for similar words.

**Inhalt der Wortgruppe**

**Allgemein** **Wörter**

Art

- ☐ Einfach (*schnell*, empfohlen)
- ☒ Platzhalter (langsamer, '?' und '\*' erlaubt)
- ☐ Regulärer Ausdruck (langsamer, mit Vorsicht verwenden)

Neues Wort  **Hinzufügen**

Wort

- https://bit.ly/\*

Entfernen

☐ Auch ähnliche Wörter finden

5. Click **Finish**.

# Actions in NoSpamProxy

Actions react to filter results and execute the configured tasks. In contrast to the filters, actions can change emails, e.g. by removing attachments. Actions can also override filter results. Examples are virus scanners and the [Greylisting](#) action.

## I Activating actions

1. Open the rule that should contain the action.
2. Switch to the **Actions** tab.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Select the action you want to add to the rule.
5. Click **Select and close**.

The action is added to the rule.



**NOTE:** If the rule needs to be configured, a configuration dialog opens first. After you have completed the configuration, the action will be added to your rule.

## I Available actions

For more information on available actions in NoSpamProxy, see [Actions available in NoSpamProxy](#).

# Actions available in NoSpamProxy

The following actions are available in NoSpamProxy:

- Receiver rewriter
- Protect attachments with a password
- Automatic reply
- Automatic encryption
- CxO Fraud Detection
- Applying disclaimers
- Apply DKIM signature
- Convert email to PDF document
- Greylisting
- Redirect email
- Malware scanner
- 32Guards
- Qualified document signature with digiSeal server
- Signing and/or encryption of emails
- S/MIME and PGP verification and decryption
- URL Safeguard (Action)
- Hide corporate topology

## Receiver rewriter



This action is valid for the following senders: External and Local.

This action changes the destination address upon email receipt. For example, after a change of company name, you can have all emails addressed to the old address rewritten to the new address. A second use case is the definition of a so-called secret address. For example, you can specify that all emails containing the suffix *\*secret\** in the address field are considered welcome and delivered without verification. A rule may look like this:

Position	From	To	Decision	Action
1	*@*	*secret@example.com	Pass	Receiver rewriter

The address manipulation removes the keyword and forwards this email to your correct email address. The keyword can of course be defined by you and changed again if necessary.

## Using the Address Manipulation action

1. Activate the Address Manipulation action in a rule (see above).

**The configuration dialog opens.**

**Adressmanipulation**

Diese Aktion sucht in jeder Empfängeradresse einer E-Mail nach dem angegebenen Text des Felds 'Suche' und ersetzt ihn durch den Text, der bei 'Ersetzen durch' angegeben ist (Platzhalter wie '?' und '\*' sind verboten).

Beispiel: Ein Suchtext von 'geheim' und einem leeren Ersatztext wird aus einer E-Mail-Adresse wie 'max.mustergeheim@example.com' die Adresse 'max.muster@example.com' machen.

Suche (Pflichtfeld)

Ersetzen durch (optional)

2. Under **Match**, enter the string to be replaced from the confidential address.
3. Under **Replace**, enter the text to replace the text from the **Match**.
4. Click **Save and close**.



**TIP:** For example, you may replace the string "confidential" in the confidential address "user1confidential@example.com" with an empty string for the correct address "user1@example.com".

## **Protect attachments with a password**

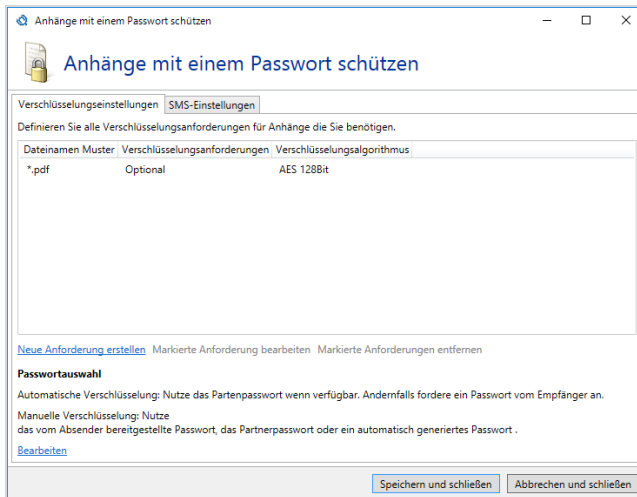


This action is valid for the following senders: Local.

This action allows you to protect PDF attachments with a password and restrict access to the document contents. With this action, NoSpamProxy Encryption supports the password protection of PDF documents. This means that PDF documents attached to emails can be protected with a password without the recipient of the documents having to meet certain requirements. This password can optionally be sent automatically to a mobile phone if a text message provider has been configured under Text message providers.

### **Using the Protect attachments with a password action**

- Add the **Protect attachments with a password** action to your rule.  
**The configuration dialog opens.**



**NOTE:** Please note the notes on unsupported scenarios in connection with the use of automatic encryption.

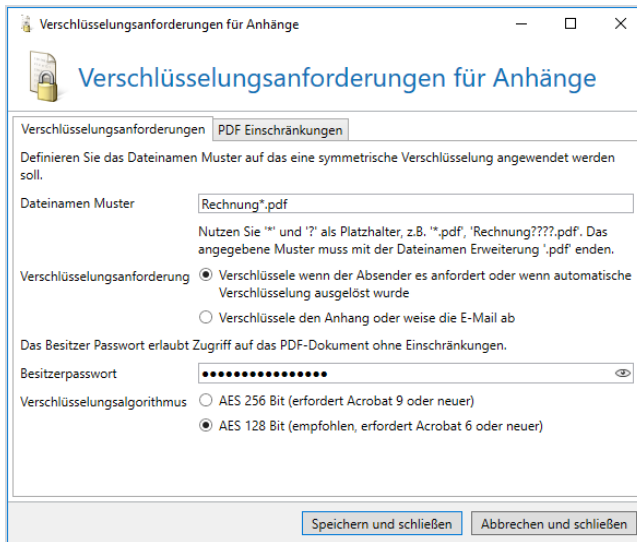


**NOTE:**  
For a password to be valid, it must have at least two of the following properties:

- It consists of at least eight characters.
- It contains a lowercase letter.
- It contains an uppercase letter.
- It contains a number.
- It contains a special character.

## Encryption requirement

1. On the **Encryption settings** tab, click **Create new requirement**.  
**The Encryption requirements for e-mail attachments dialog opens.**



Verschlüsselungsanforderungen für Anhänge

**Verschlüsselungsanforderungen für Anhänge**

Verschlüsselungsanforderungen PDF Einschränkungen

Definieren Sie das Dateinamen Muster auf das eine symmetrische Verschlüsselung angewendet werden soll.

Dateinamen Muster:

Nutzen Sie '\*' und '?' als Platzhalter, z.B. '\*.pdf', 'Rechnung????.pdf'. Das angegebene Muster muss mit der Dateinamen Erweiterung '.pdf' enden.

Verschlüsselungsanforderung: ☒ Verschlüssele wenn der Absender es anfordert oder wenn automatische Verschlüsselung ausgelöst wurde  
☐ Verschlüssele den Anhang oder weise die E-Mail ab

Das Besitzer Passwort erlaubt Zugriff auf das PDF-Dokument ohne Einschränkungen.

Besitzerpasswort:

Verschlüsselungsalgorithmus: ☐ AES 256 Bit (erfordert Acrobat 9 oder neuer)  
☒ AES 128 Bit (empfohlen, erfordert Acrobat 6 oder neuer)

Speichern und schließen Abbrechen und schließen

2. Enter the file name pattern for the PDF files to be encrypted.



**TIP:** You can use the place holders '\*' and '?'.

3. Specify whether all PDF attachments that match the specified file name pattern are to be encrypted or whether they are to be sent unencrypted if neither the user nor the rule requires it.
4. Enter an owner password.



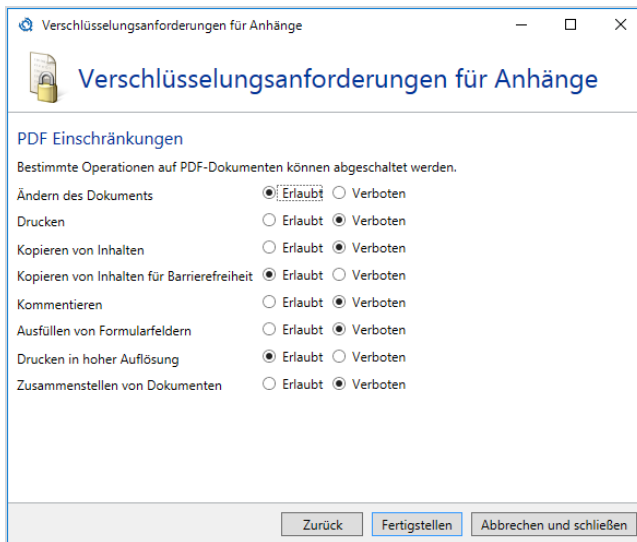
**NOTE:** An owner password is used to apply any PDF access restrictions. This password is required to ensure the security of PDF documents. By using this password, users can disable the PDF access restriction.

5. Specify the encryption algorithm.



**TIP:** We recommend 128-bit AES for the optimal balance of security and compatibility.

6. Switch to the **PDF restrictions** tab.



7. Here you can configure the different operations on protected PDF documents.

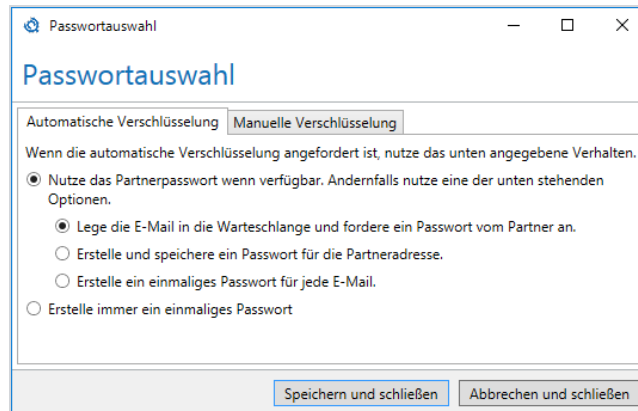


**NOTE:** Restrictions selected here can be removed by entering the owner password entered in the first step.

8. Click **Finish**.

## Password selection

1. Click **Modify**.
2. Define the sources from which the passwords are taken when
  - for the automatic encryption as well as



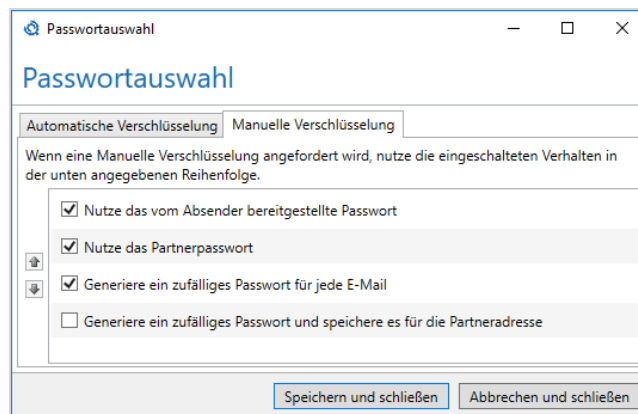
The screenshot shows the 'Passwortauswahl' (Password Selection) dialog box with the 'Automatische Verschlüsselung' (Automatic Encryption) tab selected. The title bar reads 'Passwortauswahl'. Below the title, there are two tabs: 'Automatische Verschlüsselung' and 'Manuelle Verschlüsselung'. The main text says: 'Wenn die automatische Verschlüsselung angefordert ist, nutze das unten angegebene Verhalten.' (When automatic encryption is requested, use the behavior specified below). There are four radio button options:

- ☒ Nutze das Partnerpasswort wenn verfügbar. Andernfalls nutze eine der unten stehenden Optionen. (Use the partner password if available. Otherwise use one of the options below.)
- ☐ Lege die E-Mail in die Warteschlange und fordere ein Passwort vom Partner an. (Put the email in the queue and request a password from the partner.)
- ☐ Erstelle und speichere ein Passwort für die Partneradresse. (Create and store a password for the partner address.)
- ☐ Erstelle ein einmaliges Passwort für jede E-Mail. (Create a one-time password for every email.)
- ☐ Erstelle immer ein einmaliges Passwort. (Always create a one-time password.)

At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Speichern und schließen' (Save and close) and 'Abbrechen und schließen' (Cancel and close).

for the

- manual encryption.



The screenshot shows the 'Passwortauswahl' (Password Selection) dialog box with the 'Manuelle Verschlüsselung' (Manual Encryption) tab selected. The title bar reads 'Passwortauswahl'. Below the title, there are two tabs: 'Automatische Verschlüsselung' and 'Manuelle Verschlüsselung'. The main text says: 'Wenn eine Manuelle Verschlüsselung angefordert wird, nutze die eingeschalteten Verhalten in der unten angegebenen Reihenfolge.' (When manual encryption is requested, use the enabled behaviors in the order specified below). There are four checkboxes:

- ☒ Nutze das vom Absender bereitgestellte Passwort (Use the password provided by the sender)
- ☒ Nutze das Partnerpasswort (Use the partner password)
- ☒ Generiere ein zufälliges Passwort für jede E-Mail (Generate a random password for every email)
- ☐ Generiere ein zufälliges Passwort und speichere es für die Partneradresse (Generate a random password and store it for the partner address)

At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Speichern und schließen' (Save and close) and 'Abbrechen und schließen' (Cancel and close).



**NOTE:** If you add multiple sources during manual encryption, they are processed from top to bottom. The first source that returns a password is used. You must add at least one password source to continue.

3. Click **Save and close**.
4. Under **Text message settings**, **Send a text message to automatically notify the recipient**.



**NOTE:** To use this feature, a text message provider must be configured.

5. Select the name in the **Text message provider profile** list.
6. Create a text template for the text message.



**NOTE:** The maximum length of the text template is 120 characters.

## Controlling the PDF encryption

The encryption can be controlled by different mechanisms. For the manual input of password and telephone number certain subject flags can be used inside the subject line. For automatic input, email headers are used.

These email headers can be set directly on the sender's computer when sending emails using the NoSpamProxy Outlook Add-in.



**TIP:** See Subject flags to learn how to use keywords for PDF encryption in subject lines. The NoSpamProxy Outlook Add-In manual contains everything you need to know about using the Add-In.

## Automatic reply



This action is valid for the following senders: External and Local.

This action sends an automatic reply to the sender of an email. The text of the email is created using a template from the Templates folder of the Intranet Role. A sample template (SampleAutoReply.cshtml) is copied by the setup into the folder. You can make copies of this template and adapt it to your needs. Changes to templates are replicated from the Intranet Role to all Gateway Roles within a few minutes. The roles do not need to be restarted for this.



**NOTE:** The automatic esponder responds to every email that is processed by the corresponding rule. Thus, it is possible for an email sender to receive multiple automatic replies. This behaviour differs from the out-of-office function in Microsoft Outlook/Exchange, which sends automatic replies only once per email sender.

## Customising the response templates

1. Switch to the system on which the Intranet Role is installed.
2. Go to **C:\Program Files\NoSpamProxy\Intranet Role\Templates\**.
3. Make a copy of the file **SampleAutoReply.cshtml** and save it under a new name.
4. Make the desired changes to the text part of the file.



**NOTE:** Make sure that you do not change the HTML structure. Otherwise the template will not be recognised.

5. Place the file in the directory mentioned above.
6. Switch to the NoSpamProxy Command Center and restart the Intranet Role.



The templates are now read in again; email traffic is not affected.

## Applying the action

1. Go to **Configuration > Rules**.
2. Open the rule to which the auto responder is to be applied.
3. Go to the tab **Actions** and add the action **Automatic reply**.
4. Select the desired template from the drop-down menu.
5. Save the rule.

## Automatic encryption



This action is available if NoSpamProxy Encryption is licensed.

This action is available for outbound rules. The following actions are required to use it:

- Convert email to PDF document
- Protect attachments with a password
- Signing and/or encryption of emails

If the actions listed above are missing in the respective rule, click **Add necessary actions** and add them to the list.



**NOTE:** The configuration of the actions corresponds to the configuration of the default rules.

## CxO Fraud Detection

CxO fraud detection is used to detect phishing attacks. It compares the sender name of incoming emails with the names of company users. Fake emails sent to you on behalf of superiors or employees are intercepted in this way.

During the analysis different variants of the sender name are included in the comparison:

- Jane Doe
- Doe Jane
- JaneDoe
- DoeJane

All corporate users that you want to use for CxO Fraud Detection must first be registered for the respective **Corporate users**.

## Applying disclaimers



This action is valid for the following senders: Local.

This action adds a disclaimer to outbound emails. For this purpose, the disclaimer rules and templates are evaluated and attached to the appropriate places in the emails. See **Disclaimer**.



**NOTE:** To use the Disclaimer function, it must be licensed.

## ■ Apply DKIM signature



This action is valid for the following senders: Local.

This action adds a DKIM signature (DomainKeys Identified Mail) to outbound emails. This allows the recipient to ensure that the email was actually sent by your company.

A DKIM key is required to create the signature. For information on how to create and publish DKIM keys, see **DomainKeys Identified Mail**.

## ■ Convert email to PDF document



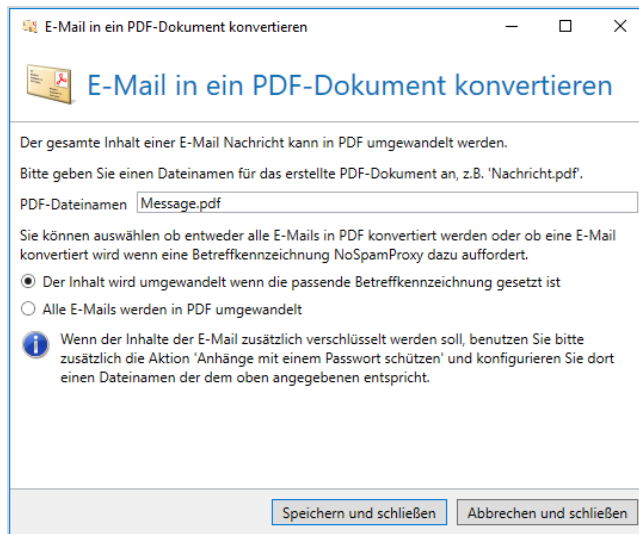
This action is valid for the following senders: External and Local.

This action converts the entire email content into a PDF document. All existing email attachments are embedded in the PDF document. The newly created PDF document is then attached to the email instead of the original content.

### Applying the action

1. Open a rule for outbound emails.
2. Switch to the **Filters** tab.
3. Click **Add** and select the **Convert emails to PDF action**.

4. Click **Select and close**.



5. In the PDF file name **field**, **select** the file name of the attachment in which you want to embed the email.
6. Configure whether emails are converted in all cases or only if the user determines this by setting the appropriate subject flag or via the Outlook Add-In.



**NOTE:**

By using the **Convert email to PDF document** and **Protect PDF document with a password** actions simultaneously, you can convert the contents of emails to a PDF document and password protect it at the same time.

To do this, in the **Convert email to PDF** action, configure a file name that is also entered in the **Protect attachments with a password** action. This converts the email into a password protected PDF document with the configured name.



**NOTE:** If the file names in the two actions are different, the attachments will be transmitted unprotected. This is because if a file name pattern of, for example, invoice.pdf is to be protected, an attachment with this name is embedded in the password action in an email by converting it into a file named message.pdf. As a result, the actual invoice.pdf attachment is no longer included in the email but only the message.pdf file. However, this file is not registered for password protection.



**NOTE:** Please refer to the information on unsupported scenarios in connection with the use of automatic encryption.

## Greylisting



This action is valid for the following senders: External.

Greylisting is a precautionary measure against "suspicious" emails. If emails remain just below the spam threshold you defined, without greylisting these emails would be rated as sufficiently safe.

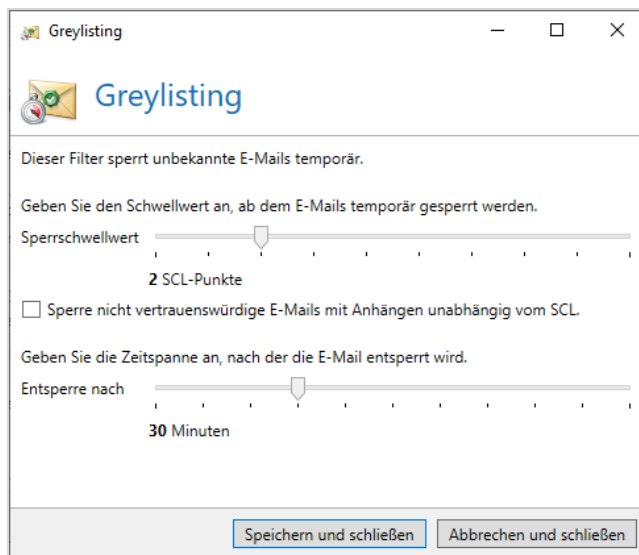
The greylisting action does not let this email pass immediately, but temporarily rejects it. The sending email server receives an error message instructing it to resend the email after a certain amount of time. The email will then be delivered again. You can set the time at which the submitting server may perform a second attempt.

Greylisting is based on the following principle: A spammer usually saves himself the effort of sending a second email. A regular sender, on the other hand, will try to have the email delivered again after some time. On the second attempt this connection is now considered to be of higher value, resulting in the email being allowed to pass. You can individually set the threshold for the number of penalty points that determines when emails that pass are still classified as suspicious.

## Activating the Greylisting action

1. Open a rule for inbound emails.
2. Switch to the **Actions** tab.
3. Click **Add** and select the **Greylisting** action.
4. Click **Select and close**.

The configuration dialog opens.



5. Specify,

- the threshold value for activating greylisting and
- the period of time after which emails are unblocked again.

6. **Optional** Check the box if you want to block untrusted emails with attachments regardless of the spam confidence level.



**NOTE:** The greylisting threshold must be lower than the spam threshold, otherwise greylisting will not work.


## Redirect email



This action is valid for the following senders: External and Local.

The action offers the possibility to add or completely replace the email recipients. Depending on the settings, emails are either delivered additionally or solely to the recipients defined in the action.

Leite E-Mails um

 **Leite E-Mails um**

Nutzen Sie dies Aktion um E-Mails zu neuen Empfängern umzuleiten.

☐ Versende nur zu den **neuen** Empfängern

☒ Versende **zusätzlich** zu den neuen Empfängern

**Neue Empfänger**

Adresse

Adresse

Entfernen

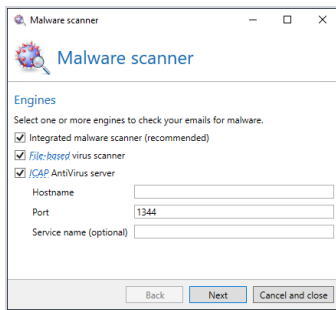


**NOTE:** One or more recipients must be entered into the list to be able to use the action.

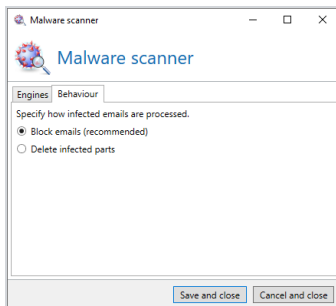
## **I** Malware scanner

This action comprises three different engines, each of which can be used individually or in combination with each other. Details on the individual engines can be found below.

- On the **Engines** tab, select the engine.



- On the **Behaviour** tab, determine how emails are processed if one or more engines detect an infection.



## Integrated Malware Scanner

The Integrated Malware Scanner checks the attachments of incoming emails.



**NOTE:** To ensure parallel operation with other locally installed virus scanners on the gateway role, also observe the notes at [Installierte On-Access-Virens Scanner konfigurieren](#).

See

### Melden von False Negatives und False Positives

## File-based virus scanner

This action is valid for the following senders: External and Local.

The file-based virus scanner stores attachments of incoming emails in a specific directory. If you have any on-access virus scanner installed, this scanner will deny read access to any infected attachments. NoSpamProxy Protection checks whether access is possible or not immediately after the attachments are placed in the directory. Attachments that can be accessed are considered free of viruses. NoSpamProxy Protection can work together with any virus scanner that monitors file accesses in real time. This scan method is already installed on many file servers, high-performing and reliable.

Attachments contained in emails in RTF format can also be processed by virus scanners. The attachments - which are named winmail.dat by default - are checked and blocked individually if necessary. Please note that this type of processing represents a change to the respective email.

The directory for temporary file storage is %ProgramData%\ "Net at Work Mail Gateway\Temporary Files \Netatwork.NospamProxy.Addins.Core.Actions.FileVirusScanAction. In older installations the files may be found in the NoSpamProxy installation directory \AntiSpam Role\Temporary Files \Netatwork.NospamProxy.Addins.Core.Actions.FileVirusScanAction located</mtlingo> .

To solve (recurring) problems with the interaction of installed on-access virus scanners, configure your virus scanner so that the **directories are**

- C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Core Antispam Engine

- C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Temporary Files\MailQueues
- C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Temporary Files\MailsOnHold
- C:\Program Files\NoSpamProxy\Core Antispam Engine

be excluded from the scan on all systems with the Gateway Role or Web Portal installed.



**NOTE:** Note that the path is a hidden directory.

For servers with Web Portal installed, the following **folder** (default path for storing files for the Web Portal) must be excluded:

- C:\Program Files\NoSpamProxy\Web Portal

Otherwise, with some virus scanners, access to the Web Portal may be severely delayed and communication problems may occur.

In addition, an exception for the **processes**

- amserver.exe and
- NoSpamProxy.CoreAntispamEngine.exe

should be set if the on-access virus scanner allows this.

**TIP:**

If you do not find the path described above, it is most likely an older NoSpamProxy installation that has already been updated several times. In this case, please first check the file **C:\ProgramData\Net at Work Mail Gateway\Configuration\Gateway Role.config** and look for the entry **<storageLocation path=**.

This path is currently used by the Gateway Role.

If you have enabled file-based virus scanning in the rules, also ensure that your scanner is configured to completely delete or quarantine infected files and archives. If the scanner is configured to **Clean up**, NoSpamProxy often cannot detect that these have been modified by the installed scanner. Thus, the "file-based virus scan" then fails despite successful detection by NoSpamProxy. This occurs particularly with archives.

You can determine whether contaminated attachments are deleted or whether the corresponding email is blocked automatically.



**NOTE:** In case emails are rejected, the sender is informed of this by the delivering server. Neither the sender nor the recipient is informed of a deleted attachment.



**NOTE:** As with all virus scanners, password-protected ZIP files are not checked and are passed on without further examination.

## ICAP Antivirus Server

The Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) is a protocol for forwarding content for HTTP-, HTTPS- and FTP-based services. An ICAP server receives data, which is then processed by a server-based virus scanner, for example.

If you select the ICAP Antivirus Server action, NoSpamProxy acts as an ICAP client. The data is then sent by NoSpamProxy to your ICAP server and scanned. When the scanning process is complete, the ICAP server sends the results to NoSpamProxy. Depending on this result, the configured action is executed.



**NOTE:** For the ICAP Antivirus Server action, you need access to an ICAP server.

## I 32Guards

32Guards is on the one hand a filter that influences the Spam Confidence Level rating, and on the other hand an action that can directly reject threats temporarily or permanently. See [32Guards](#).

## I Qualified document signature with digiSeal server

The actions of qualified document signature are used, for example, to sign invoices or to verify the receipt of signed documents. NoSpamProxy Encryption offers this function in conjunction with the digiSeal server by secrypt GmbH. This means that for this function, in addition to NoSpamProxy Encryption, a digiSeal server must also be available in your infrastructure.



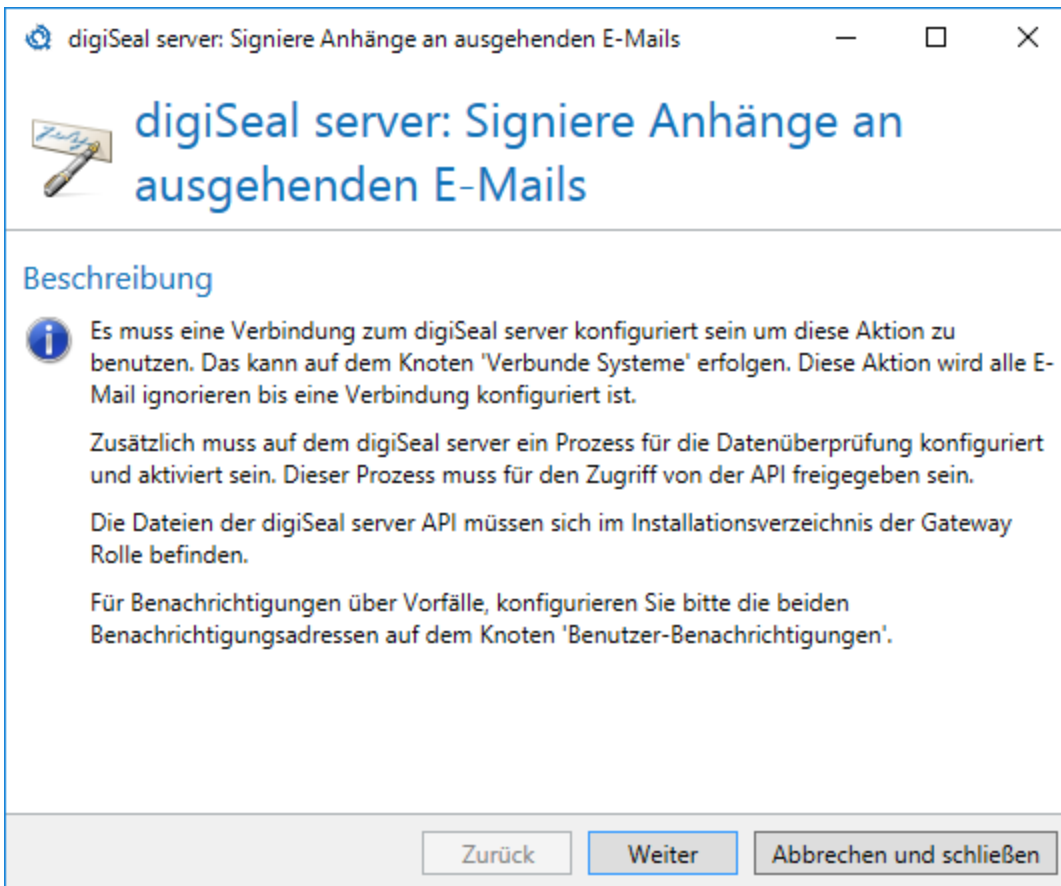
**NOTE:** The use of the actions for the qualified signature requires the installation and configuration of a digiSeal server by [secrypt GmbH](#). To install a digiSeal server please contact us at [info@netatwork.de](mailto:info@netatwork.de). You set up the connection to the digiSeal server at . In addition, the digiSeal server API files must be located in the Gateway Role directory.

### digiSeal server: Sign attachments to outbound emails



**NOTE:** This action is valid for the following senders: Local.

This action signs documents in file attachments that match certain naming patterns. The signature process can work with different signature formats and also add an optional time stamp.



**NOTE:**

Before you configure this action, you must ensure the following:

- The connection to the digiSeal server must be configured.
- A process for data verification must be defined and activated on the digiSeal server. This process must be enabled for access by the API.
- The digiSeal server API files must be located in the installation directory of the Gateway Role.

digiSeal server: Signiere Anhänge an ausgehenden E-Mails

## digiSeal server: Signiere Anhänge an ausgehenden E-Mails

### Dateinamenmuster

Diese Aktion wird Dateianhänge mit Dateinamen signieren, die den unten definierten Mustern entsprechen (benutzen Sie '?' und '\*' als Platzhalter).

Dateinamen Muster

Rechnung\*.pdf

Markierte Einträge löschen

The action will sign files with certain naming patterns. Here you can store the complete file names of documents to be signed or parts thereof.

#### EXAMPLE:

You want to sign invoices with file names such as Invoice May 2021.pdf or Invoice March 2021.pdf. Here you can add the filter invoice\*.pdf. The action would now sign all files that match this pattern, including for example InvoiceToJohnDoeCancelled.pdf. You can store one or more of these patterns so that you can sign different types of files with the same action.

digiSeal server: Signiere Anhänge an ausgehenden E-Mails

## digiSeal server: Signiere Anhänge an ausgehenden E-Mails

### Signaturoptionen

Abhängig von Ihrem Geschäftsprozess und den gewählten Dateitypen müssen unterschiedliche Signaturformate ausgewählt werden.

Signaturformat: PKCS#7 signed-data (detached).p7s

Ein Zeitstempel stellt sicher, dass die Signatur an einem bestimmten Zeitpunkt dem Dokument hinzugefügt wurde. Das kann von Ihrem Geschäftsprozess verlangt werden.

Zeitstempel: ☒ Kein Zeitstempel ☐ Zeitstempel erstellen

Zurück Fertigstellen Abbrechen und schließen

Depending on the business process and the data to be signed, you must now select a signature format. The following signature formats are available:

- PKCS #7 encapsulated signature
- PKCS #7 single signature
- PKCS #7 S/MIME multipart signature
- XML single signature
- XML embedded signature
- XML single signature using the XADES standard
- XML embedded signature using the XADES standard

- EDIFACT signature
- Adobe PDF Reference Version 1.6 PKCS #7 signed data signature

In addition to the signature format, you can also add an optional time stamp. The timestamp correlates to the date and time the document was signed.



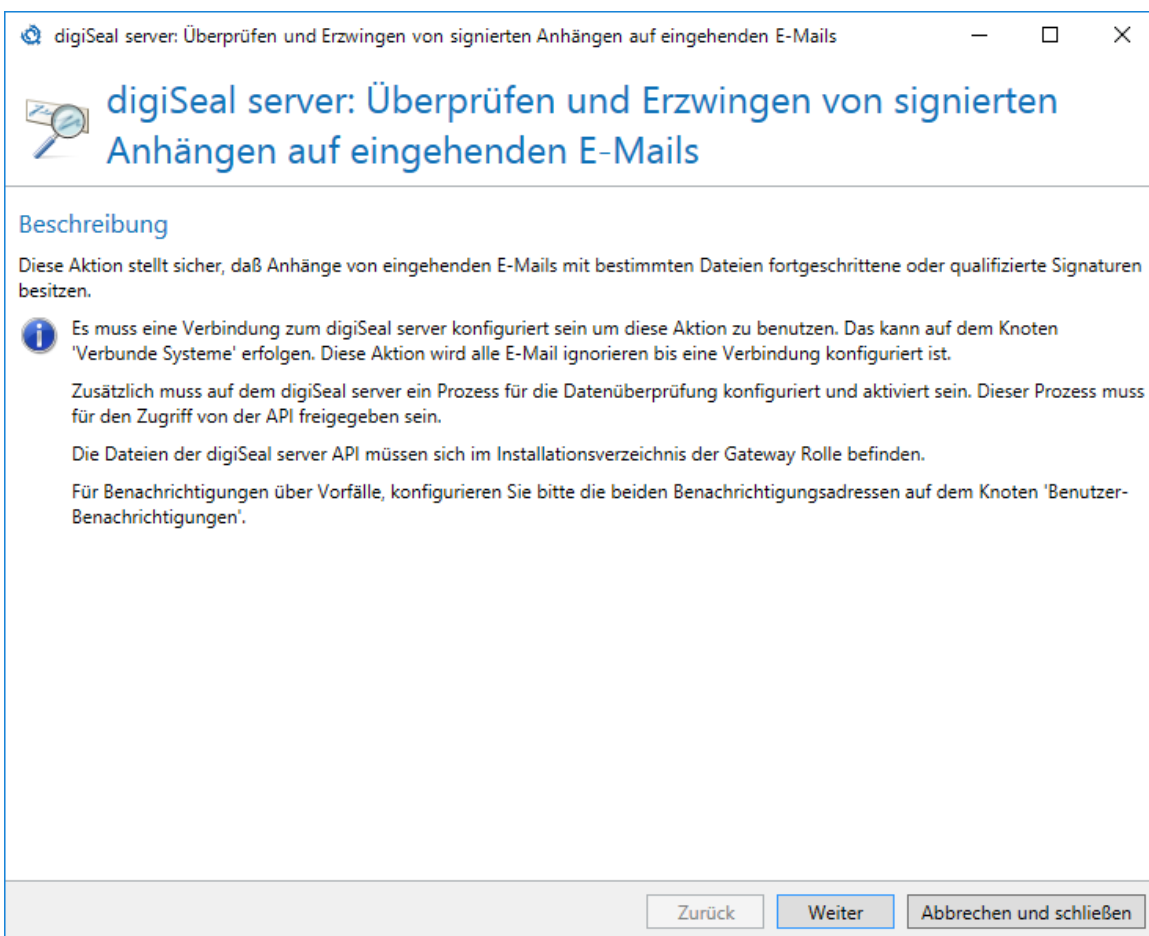
**NOTE:** Make sure that the settings for this action meets the requirements of your business process for the qualified signature.

## **digiSeal server: Verify and enforce attachment signatures on inbound emails**



**NOTE:** This action is valid for the following senders: External.

This action scans the attachments of emails sent to local addresses for signatures. For each file type, you can specify whether a qualified or advanced signature is required. The requirements depend on the respective business process and any laws involved.



**NOTE:**


Before you configure this action, you must ensure the following:

- The connection to the digiSeal server must have been configured under Advanced settings.
- On the digiSeal server an activated process must be configured for data inspection. This process must be enabled for API access.
- The digiSeal server API files must be located in the installation directory of the Gateway Role.

Three levels are available for the verification of documents. The option **Verification options** corresponds to the section **Verification depth** in the digiSeal server on the tab **2.5: Verification**.

- Verification of the file integrity, i.e. whether the file has been modified since it was signed.
- Local verification of the certificate chain.
- Online verification of the certificate used (through the OCSP protocol).


digiSeal server: Überprüfen und Erzwingen von signierten Anhängen auf eingehende E-Mails

 digiSeal server: Überprüfen und Erzwingen von signierten Anhängen auf eingehende E-Mails

**Überprüfungsoptionen**

Der Überprüfungsbereich bestimmt welche Schritte der Überprüfung durchgeführt werden.

Überprüfungsbereich

- ☐ Überprüfung der Dateiintegrität
- ☒ Überprüfung der Dateiintegrität und lokale Überprüfung der Zertifikatskette
- ☐ Überprüfung der Dateiintegrität, lokale Überprüfung der Zertifikatskette und online Zertifikats Überprüfung (OCSP)
-  Der Zertifikatsordner, den der digiSeal server für den Überprüfungsprozess benutzt, muss richtig konfiguriert sein.

Die Signatur eines Anhangs kann von der E-Mail entfernt werden. Das ist nützlich wenn die E-Mails von Dritten Systemen automatisch weiterverarbeitet werden. Diese Einstellung wird für in das signierte Dokument eingebettete Signaturen ignoriert.

Entfernen der Signatur

- ☒ Signatur von eingehenden E-Mails entfernen (empfohlen)
- ☐ Einzelne Signaturen an eingehenden E-Mails belassen

Zurück Weiter Abbrechen und schließen

The second and third levels respectively include the verifications from the previous levels.

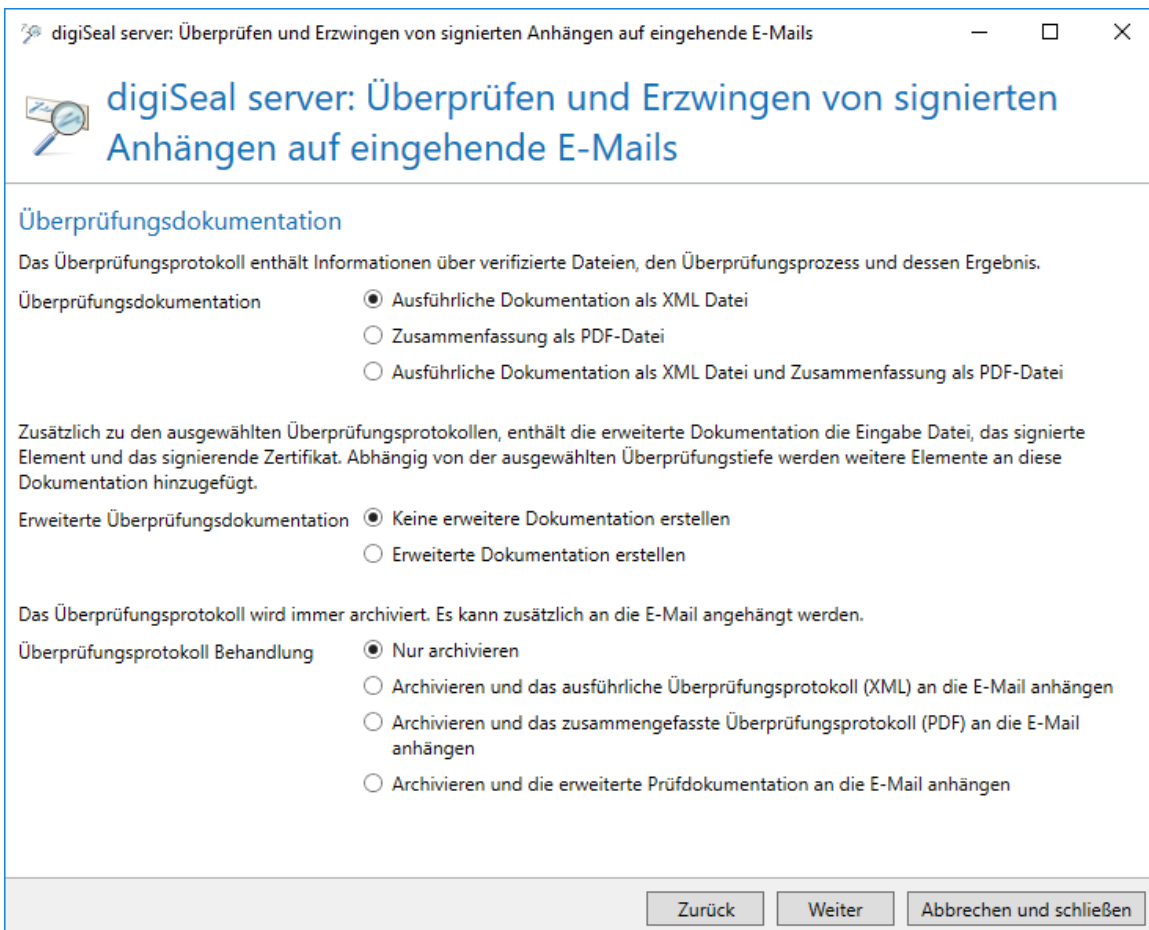


**TIP:** Signatures that are attached to the signed document can be automatically removed. The removal of signatures is recommended if the emails are to be processed automatically by other systems.

The options of the inspection documentation consist of three parts:

- the settings for the verification protocol,
- the advanced verification documentation and
- the settings for archiving the created logs or advanced documentation.

The verification protocol can consist of a detailed XML file and/or a summary of the verification as a PDF document. In addition to this protocol, further details of the inspection can be recorded in the extended inspection documentation. In addition to archiving the verification protocol, you can attach any protocols or documentation that may have been created to the email.



**digiSeal server: Überprüfen und Erzwingen von signierten Anhängen auf eingehende E-Mails**

**Überprüfungsdokumentation**

Das Überprüfungsprotokoll enthält Informationen über verifizierte Dateien, den Überprüfungsprozess und dessen Ergebnis.

Überprüfungsdokumentation

- ☒ Ausführliche Dokumentation als XML Datei
- ☐ Zusammenfassung als PDF-Datei
- ☐ Ausführliche Dokumentation als XML Datei und Zusammenfassung als PDF-Datei

Zusätzlich zu den ausgewählten Überprüfungsprotokollen, enthält die erweiterte Dokumentation die Eingabe Datei, das signierte Element und das signierende Zertifikat. Abhängig von der ausgewählten Überprüfungstiefe werden weitere Elemente an diese Dokumentation hinzugefügt.

Erweiterte Überprüfungsdokumentation

- ☒ Keine erweiterte Dokumentation erstellen
- ☐ Erweiterte Dokumentation erstellen

Das Überprüfungsprotokoll wird immer archiviert. Es kann zusätzlich an die E-Mail angehängt werden.

Überprüfungsprotokoll Behandlung

- ☒ Nur archivieren
- ☐ Archivieren und das ausführliche Überprüfungsprotokoll (XML) an die E-Mail anhängen
- ☐ Archivieren und das zusammengefasste Überprüfungsprotokoll (PDF) an die E-Mail anhängen
- ☐ Archivieren und die erweiterte Prüfdokumentation an die E-Mail anhängen

Zurück Weiter Abbrechen und schließen




**NOTE:** To successfully archive emails to local addresses, a suitable archive connector must be defined under Archive connectors. If no archive connector is defined or an archive connector is defined whose assignment of email addresses to the profiles does not apply to the email, the email is processed as usual without being archived.

Depending on the file name, you can determine which signature type the signature must match for the differently signed files sent to you:

- Documents with the file name pattern "EnergyInvoice\*.pdf" must have a qualified signature.
- Documents with the file name pattern: "TransportInvoice\*.pdf" must have an advanced signature.

digiSeal server: Überprüfen und Erzwingen von signierten Anhängen auf eingehende E-Mails

 digiSeal server: Überprüfen und Erzwingen von signierten Anhängen auf eingehende E-Mails

**Signaturanforderungen**

Diese Aktion verarbeitet nur Dateien, die den unten definierten Dateinamen Mustern entsprechen. Für jedes Muster kann entweder eine fortgeschrittene Signatur oder eine qualifizierte Signatur als Anforderung gesetzt werden. (Benutzen Sie '?' oder '\*' als Platzhalter.)

Eine qualifizierte Signatur ist erforderlich Hinzufügen

Signatur Dateinamen Muster	Erforderliche Signatur Typen
*.pdf	Qualifizierte Signatur

Markierte Einträge löschen

Zurück Fertigstellen Abbrechen und schließen


## Signing and/or encryption of emails



This action is valid for the following senders: Local.

This action encrypts or signs emails with the cryptographic keys available in the certificate or PGP key management.

Signieren und/oder Verschlüsseln von E-Mails

 **Signieren und/oder Verschlüsseln von E-Mails**

Signaturoptionen    Verschlüsselungsoptionen

Eine digitale Signatur stellt die Authentizität einer E-Mail sicher. Um eine E-Mail zu signieren muss ein privater kryptographischer Schlüssel auf dem Knoten 'Zertifikate' oder 'PGP-Schlüssel' hinterlegt sein.

- ☒ E-Mails signieren wenn ein kryptographischer Schlüssel verfügbar ist und alle anderen E-Mails ohne Signatur versenden
- ☐ Signiere E-Mails oder lehne sie ab wenn kein kryptographischer Schlüssel verfügbar ist
- ☐ Standardmäßig E-Mails ohne Signatur senden

Mitarbeiter können ihre ausgehenden E-Mails mit einem persönlichen kryptographischen Schlüssel auf ihren Computer signieren. Die Empfänger dieser E-Mails können ihre Antwort dadurch verschlüsseln. Diese Antwort-E-Mails können durch das Gateway nicht entschlüsselt oder auf Spam und Schadsoftware untersucht werden.

- ☒ Entferne vorhandene Signaturen (empfohlen)
- ☐ Vorhandene Signaturen behalten

Speichern und schließen    Abbrechen und schließen

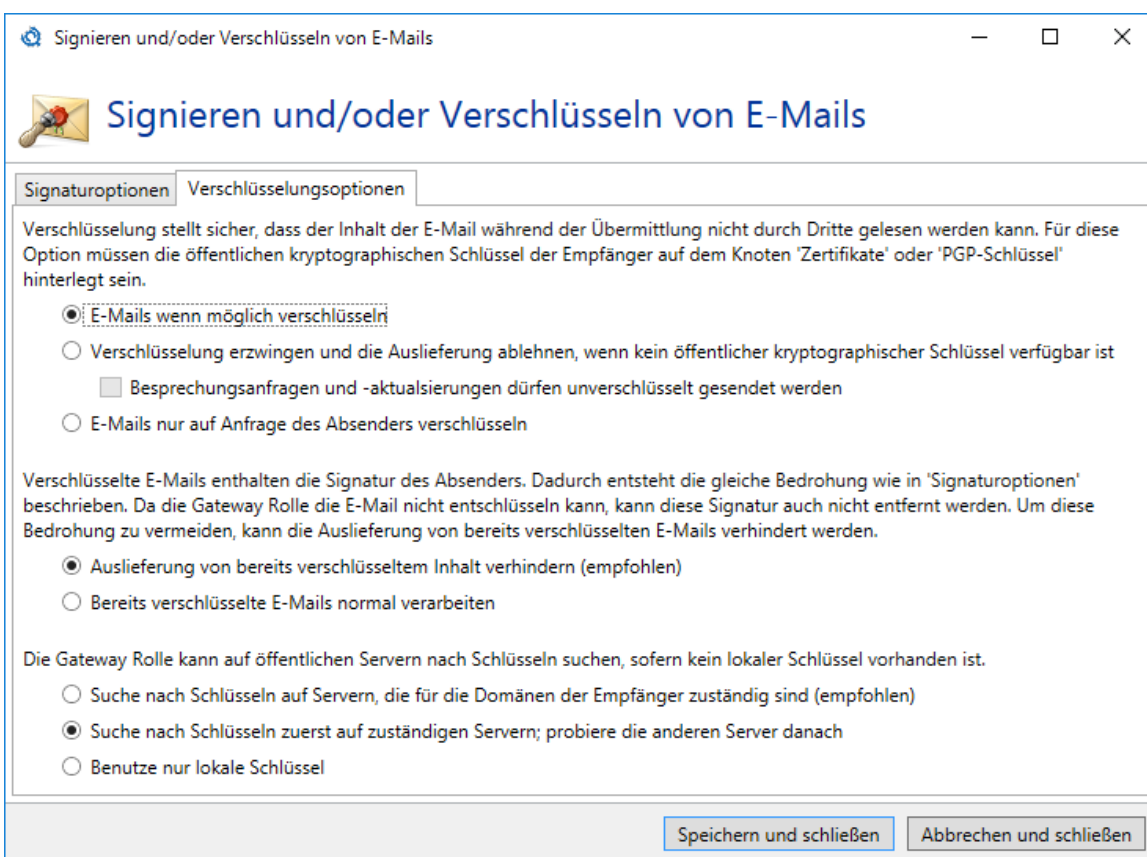
## Digital signature

Specify one of the following behaviours for the signature:

- Sign email if a cryptographic key is available for the sender and send all other emails without signature.
- Sign the email with a cryptographic key of the sender or refuse to send the email if no cryptographic key is available.
- Send all emails without signature.

## Existing signatures

Emails from local senders may already contain signatures. These keys pose a security risk because a reply to such an email can be encrypted. This encrypted content cannot be analysed for spam and malware if NoSpamProxy Protection is used at the same time, because the key required for decryption is not on the server and only known to the sender. You can have existing signatures removed from emails to minimize the risk described above.



The screenshot shows a Windows dialog box titled "Signieren und/oder Verschlüsseln von E-Mails". It has two tabs: "Signaturoptionen" (selected) and "Verschlüsselungsoptionen". The "Signaturoptionen" tab contains the following text and options:

Verschlüsselung stellt sicher, dass der Inhalt der E-Mail während der Übermittlung nicht durch Dritte gelesen werden kann. Für diese Option müssen die öffentlichen kryptographischen Schlüssel der Empfänger auf dem Knoten 'Zertifikate' oder 'PGP-Schlüssel' hinterlegt sein.

- ☒ E-Mails wenn möglich verschlüsseln
- ☐ Verschlüsselung erzwingen und die Auslieferung ablehnen, wenn kein öffentlicher kryptographischer Schlüssel verfügbar ist
  - ☐ Besprechungsanfragen und -aktualisierungen dürfen unverschlüsselt gesendet werden
- ☐ E-Mails nur auf Anfrage des Absenders verschlüsseln

Verschlüsselte E-Mails enthalten die Signatur des Absenders. Dadurch entsteht die gleiche Bedrohung wie in 'Signaturoptionen' beschrieben. Da die Gateway Rolle die E-Mail nicht entschlüsseln kann, kann diese Signatur auch nicht entfernt werden. Um diese Bedrohung zu vermeiden, kann die Auslieferung von bereits verschlüsselten E-Mails verhindert werden.

- ☒ Auslieferung von bereits verschlüsseltem Inhalt verhindern (empfohlen)
- ☐ Bereits verschlüsselte E-Mails normal verarbeiten

Die Gateway Rolle kann auf öffentlichen Servern nach Schlüsseln suchen, sofern kein lokaler Schlüssel vorhanden ist.

- ☐ Suche nach Schlüsseln auf Servern, die für die Domänen der Empfänger zuständig sind (empfohlen)
- ☒ Suche nach Schlüsseln zuerst auf zuständigen Servern; probiere die anderen Server danach
- ☐ Benutze nur lokale Schlüssel

At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Speichern und schließen" and "Abbrechen und schließen".

## Email encryption

Here you can set whether you want to encrypt emails or not. You can also specify how to handle already encrypted emails. If you do not want to send email unencrypted under any circumstance, you can configure an exception for meeting requests. If these are encrypted, they can no longer be processed by Outlook.

Since encrypted emails usually contain the sender's signature, this poses the same security risk as signatures already present in emails. You can prevent the delivery of encrypted emails for the same reasons as described in the section Existing signatures.



**NOTE:** NoSpamProxy Encryption has more extensive support for the S/MIME standard than most email programs. You can also use NoSpamProxy Encryption to encrypt emails without signing them. This means that the content can be encrypted using the recipient's certificate without having to have a certificate of your own. However, we recommend that you use a certificate to show the recipient the authenticity of the email.

If NoSpamProxy Encryption does not have an encryption key for a recipient, the public key servers already configured can be queried. If a key is found there, it will be used to encrypt the email.



**NOTE:** Here you can select which key server will be searched on all configured key servers. Please do not use this setting on the standard rule for messages to external

## **S/MIME and PGP verification and decryption**



This action is valid for the following senders: External and Local.

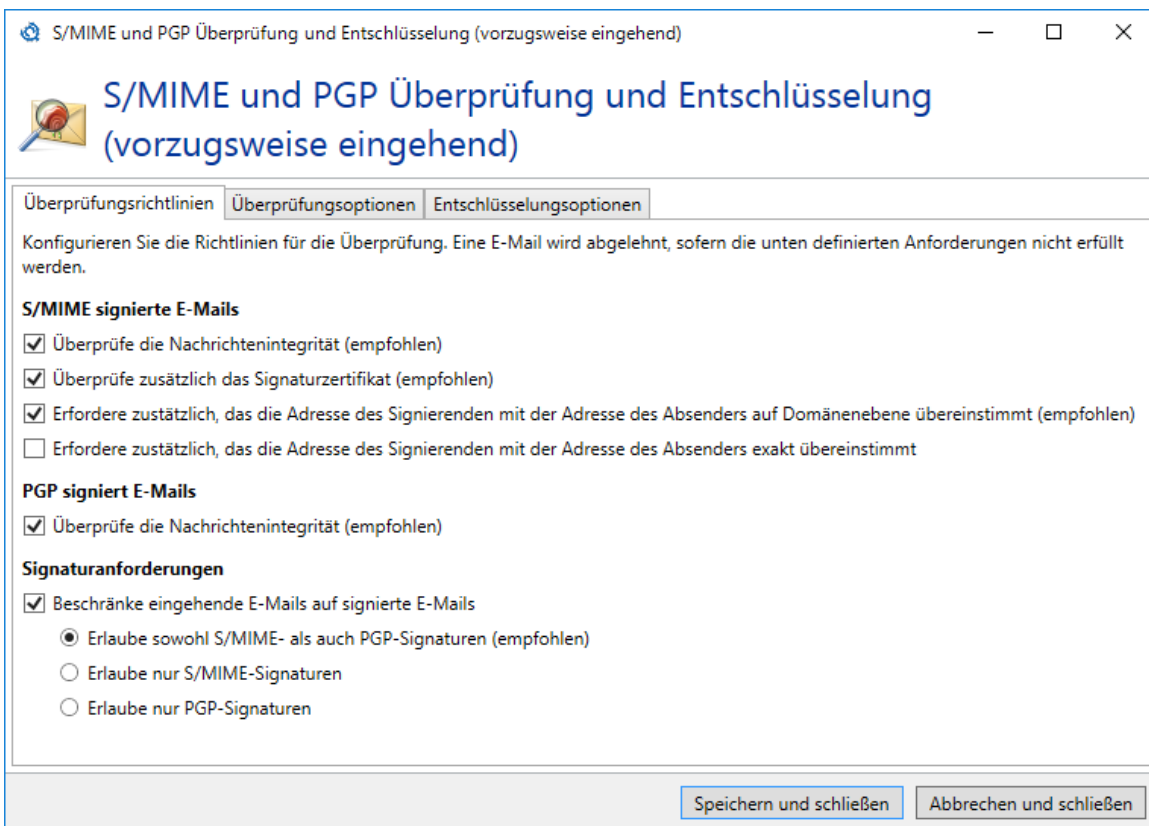
For emails to corporate recipients, the digital signature can be automatically validated and the content decrypted. You can set the options for validation and decryption individually.

### **Validation policy**

The following validation policies are possible for signatures:

- **S/MIME-signed emails** | You can select different levels of validation, each of which builds on the other.
- **PGP-signed emails** | You can only specify whether message integrity is checked.

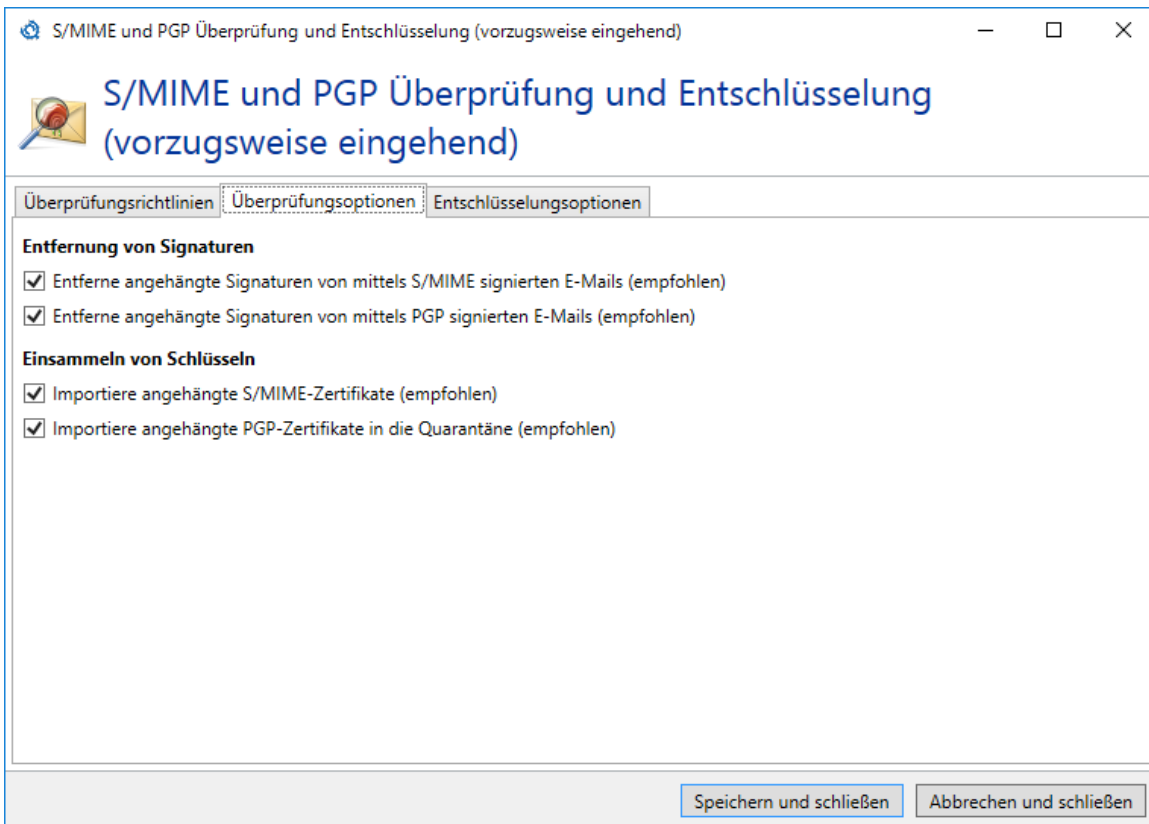
You can also specify whether all emails to local addresses must be signed. In this case, you can also restrict the possible signature procedures.



## Validation options

Here you define for S/MIME and PGP respectively whether attached keys are removed from the email. This is reasonable because otherwise users can use these keys to encrypt responses already on the client. These emails can then no longer be validated reliably by NoSpamProxy.

You can also configure whether attached keys are automatically imported into the NoSpamProxy certificate store. PGP keys are initially quarantined and must be explicitly released by the administrator.



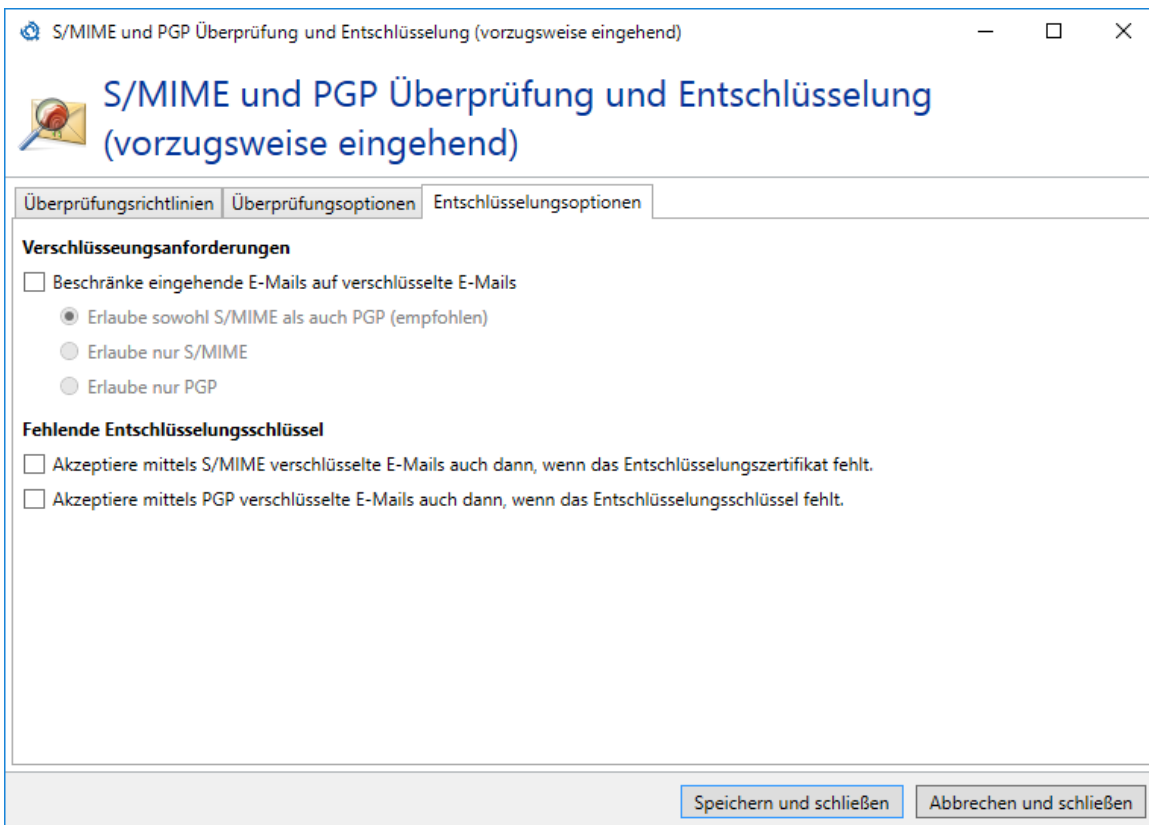
## Decryption options

On the **Decryption options** tab, you can force the encryption of emails. If this option is selected, all unencrypted emails to local addresses will be rejected. In addition, you can restrict the technologies you can use.

It is possible that emails are received encrypted, but no private certificate is available for decryption in the certificate management. These emails can be rejected or delivered to the recipient of the email in encrypted form. Since such emails cannot be checked for spam or malware, they should be rejected.



**NOTE:** Even if you have selected **Force encryption**, an unencrypted email can only be rejected after it has been transmitted.



## ■ URL Safeguard (Action)

### Activating the URL Safeguard

To use the URL Safeguard, you must add it as an action to a rule. See [Step 5: Configuring actions](#).

## Configuring the URL Safeguard

Additional settings can be made in the default partner settings or for individual partner domains. See [Default partner settings](#) and [Editing partner domains](#).

## Customising allowlists

### NoSpamProxy Allowlist

1. Go to **Configuration > URL Safeguard > Allowlist for Domains > NoSpamProxy Allowlist**.
2. Click **Modify**.
3. Check or uncheck **Automatically download and use the NoSpamProxy Allowlist**.
4. Click **Save and close**.

### Local Allowlist

1. Go to **Configuration > URL Safeguard > Allowlist for Domains > Additional Domains**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Enter one or more domains into the input field and click **Add**.
4. Click **Save and close**.

## Hide corporate topology



This action is valid for the following senders: Local.

The Hide corporate topology action removes the "received" email headers of emails from local senders. Otherwise, these Received entries can be used to draw conclusions about the local topology.

# Basic concepts

## | Sender reputation

NoSpamProxy uses a multi-level system for evaluating the sender reputation, which comprises a total of nine different checks. The most important ones include SPF, DKIM and DMARC checks, which can be used to identify beyond doubt whether an email originates from the specified sender.

- The Sender Policy Framework (SPF) prevents the forging of the sender address of e-mails.
- DomainKeys Identified Mail (DKIM) secures outgoing emails with an electronic signature. See **DKIM keys**.
- With a DMARC entry, the sending domain can determine which quality criteria an email from it must meet. NoSpamProxy consistently evaluates this information. These methods are combined with the **Level of Trust**.

You make the settings for evaluating the sender reputation in the **Reputation filter**.

**TIP:**

See our series of articles on the NoSpamProxy blog for more information on sender reputation and email security:

**[Sender reputation and email security - Part 1: Authenticated Received Chain \(ARC\)](#)**

**[Sender reputation and email security - Part 2: Sender Policy Framework \(SPF\)](#)**

**[Sender reputation and email security - Part 3: DomainKeys Identified Mail \(DKIM\)](#)**

**[Sender reputation and email security - Part 4: Domain-based Message Authentication, Reporting and Conformance \(DMARC\)](#)**

**[Sender reputation and email security - Part 5: DNS-based Authentication of Named Entities \(DANE\)](#)**

## **I** 32Guards

32Guards is on the one hand a filter that influences the calculation of the spam confidence level, and on the other hand an action that can directly reject threats temporarily or permanently.

The evaluation of emails by 32Guards is based on the evaluation of a number of indicators. This evaluation results in a final assessment of the email. Examples of such indicators are suspicious file names or the frequent occurrence of new or unknown URLs in a very short time.

This action/filter ensures that metadata on email attachments and URLs is collected and uploaded to the NoSpamProxy cloud. File contents are neither collected nor accessed. With 32Guards, attacks through spam and malware can be

detected and defended against faster and more reliably. Based on this metadata, 32Guards creates a threat assessment, which in turn is used as a basis for further actions in NoSpamProxy.

Only the following metadata is collected by NoSpamProxy:

## **Attachments**

- File name
- File size
- Details of the first ten files within archives/to a maximum of 50 files in nested archives (sorted by file type): file name, hash value, size, number, size without compression
- SHA-256 hash value
- TLSH hash value
- MIME type (as detected by NoSpamProxy)
- Information about whether malware was found in the attachment

## **URLs**

- The complete URL
- URL classification (spam, phishing, malware)

## **Emails**

- Source IP of inbound emails
- Authenticated domain and source (DKIM/SPF/S/MIME)

- Salted hash of the local part of the header-from domain and MAIL FROM domain of inbound emails
- Salted hash of the local part of the Rcpt domain and To/CC header domain of outbound emails
- Message ID
- Whether it is an automatically generated email
- Status of the chain of custody within the framework of Authenticated Received Chain (ARC)
- Status with regard to the Certified IP List of the Certified Senders Alliance (CSA)
- TLS certificate including validity, trust status, thumbprint, domain name and issuer
- Transaction ID
- Information about whether the email was inbound (trusted/untrusted) or outbound
- Version of the NoSpamProxy client
- Version of the applied 32Guards data model



From each of the areas mentioned (attachments, URLs, emails), only the worst rating is included in the calculation. Ratings from different areas are added up.

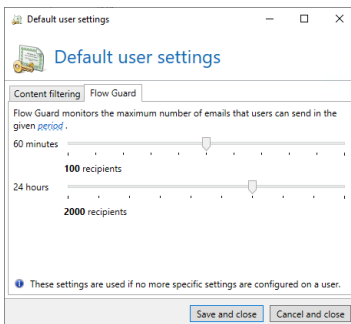
## Updates to NoSpamProxy 14 and higher

When updating from older versions to NoSpamProxy 14 and higher, the **filter 32Guards** is automatically added to a rule if the following **two** conditions are met before the update:

- The **action 32Guards** is configured as part of a rule and
- on the **tab Filter** the option **Check the email with the filters** specified below is selected.

## Flow Guard

Flow Guard ermöglicht es, die Menge an ausgehenden E-Mails zu kontrollieren. So können ungewollte Massenmails – seien sie nun von unbedarften Benutzern erzeugt oder durch Malware ausgelöst – vor dem Versand erkannt und die Reputation der eigenen Domain geschützt werden. Dazu weist Flow Guard den NoSpamProxy-Benutzern Kontingente für ausgehende E-Mails zu. If the set threshold is exceeded, any further outbound email is rejected.



There are a total of two threshold values that can be set per user:

- Number of emails per hour
- Total number of emails per day



**TIP:** You can also assign the thresholds based on AD group memberships.



**NOTE:**

NoSpamProxy allows email addresses that are not assigned to any user to be used for sending. In these cases, Flow Guard proceeds as follows:

- If no user is assigned to the email address, licences are counted per email address.
- If several email addresses are assigned to a user, the emails from all email addresses are added together.

## Setting threshold values

---

You set the thresholds either globally for all users or for individual corporate users. To do this you must

- configure the threshold values in the default user settings (see [Configuring default settings for users](#)) or
- configure the settings under **Identities > Corporate users** for the respective [Corporate users](#).

## Content filters



This feature is available if you have purchased a corresponding licence.

Inhaltsfiltersets ermöglichen das Ausführen von Inhaltsfilteraktionen auf Basis von Bedingungen. Sowohl die Inhaltsfilteraktionen als auch die Bedingungen werden in Inhaltsfilterset-Einträgen konfiguriert. Ein Inhaltsfilterset kann mehrere Inhaltsfilterset-Einträge enthalten.

The screenshot shows the NoSpamProxy Command Center interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: Overview, Monitoring, Identities, Configuration (expanded), Email routing, Rules, Content filter (selected), URL Safeguard, NoSpamProxy components, Connected systems, User notifications, Presettings, Advanced settings, and Troubleshooting. At the bottom of the sidebar are links for Actions, Refresh, and English.

The main content area is titled "Content filters". It includes a sub-header "You can apply different sets of content filters to your emails." and a table with the following data:

Name	Max message size	Auto upload	Filter entries
Inhaltsfilter	20 MB	5 MB	1
Kein Word und XLS	Any size	Disabled	3

Below the table are links: [Add](#), [Modify](#), [Remove](#), [Duplicate](#). There is also a section for "Upload hints" stating "Hints are **not added** to emails." with a [Modify](#) link.

The second section is titled "Content filter actions" with the sub-header "Define your content filter actions." and a table with the following data:

Name	Scope	Action	Attachments	Content Disarm	Document retention	File locking
Allow attachment	SMTP emails	Allow attachment				
Remove attachment	SMTP emails	Remove attachment				
Reject entire mail	SMTP emails	Reject entire email				
Gesamte E-Mail abweisen	SMTP emails	Reject entire email				
E-Mail zustellen	SMTP emails	Allow attachment	Upload to Web Portal Use Sandbox	CDR is active on PDF, Word and Excel	Discard original	Lock until approval

At the bottom of this section are links: [Add](#), [Modify](#), [Remove](#).

## How a content filter works

When creating content filters, you determine

- the general instructions for handling attachments and dealing with archives,
- the content filter actions and
- the **Defining conditions** that trigger content filter actions.

You configure both content filter actions and conditions by assigning one or more content filter entries to a content filter. See **Creating a content filter** and **Creating content filter actions**.

## Related steps

**Assigning content filters**| To apply a content filter, you must assign it under **Partners** or **Corporate users**. See [Creating a content filter](#).

**Creating content filter actions**| Content filter actions are actions that are applied to attachments and to the emails that contain these attachments. They are triggered by the fulfilment of conditions. See [Creating content filter actions](#)

**Defining conditions**| In order for content filter actions to be triggered, conditions that you have defined must be fulfilled. See [Defining conditions](#).

## I Level of Trust

Level of Trust is a multi-layered concept that assesses the trustworthiness of a communication relationship or domain.

The quality of the connection history has the greatest influence on trust. A reliable and lasting communication relationship ensures that the level of trust increases; an unreliable and fragmented communication relationship ensures that the level of trust decreases.

NoSpamProxy includes various criteria in the calculation of the value:

**Domain relationship**| Regular outbound emails to a specific email domain are rewarded. So-called freemailers are excluded from this regulation by default. See [Level of trust configuration](#).

**Address relationship between sender and recipient**| Outbound emails to certain external addresses are rewarded with a high trust bonus. See [Level of trust configuration](#).

**Combination of sender, subject and domain**| Reply emails are rewarded if the subject and domain are unchanged.

**Message ID** | The message IDs contained in email headers are rewarded - similar to reply emails - if they are unchanged.

**Delivery notifications** | Valid notifications are rewarded, invalid notifications are penalised. See **Level of trust configuration**.



NoSpamProxy rates an email as trustworthy if one of the bonuses described above is at least 40 points. The prerequisite for this is that the conditions mentioned at **Level of Trust** are fulfilled. If you want to ensure that emails from a specific partner are delivered, set the trust value fixed to 40 or higher. See **Editing partner domains**. We also recommend that you make some form of authentication a pre-requisite for all bonuses. See **Authentication as a prerequisite for all bonuses**.



**NOTE:** To protect the data, the relationship is not stored in plain text, but only in the form of a hash value (checksum).

## **Video: Level of Trust**

### **Trust must be cultivated**

If there is no outbound communication with a particular partner for a certain period of time, the level of trust is automatically reduced. This decrease in value occurs for both bonus and penalty values.



### Automatic removal of partners

Partners are automatically removed when the Level of Trust value of the respective domain has dropped to 0 **and** the partner does not have any other properties that prevent this, such as stored users, passwords or certificates.

## Points allocation for domains for Level of Trust

The bonus points for Level of Trust are assigned to the respective domains in two different ways:

- Automatically based on an outbound email.
- Manually via the user interface under **Partners** or via the PowerShell cmdlet `Set-NspPartnerTrustDetails`.

For an inbound email from this domain to receive the stored bonus points, at least one of the following conditions must be met in relation to the domain that has a certain trust level:

- The SPF check is successful.
- The DKIM check is successful.
- The DMARC check is successful.
- The email is signed using S/MIME or PGP and the signature is valid (and matches the domain in the email header).
- The IP address is mentioned in the properties of the domain. This list is automatically filled with the IP addresses that NoSpamProxy can read from the MX and A records of the respective domain. However, the addresses are only collected if there is no DMARC record for the sender domain.

No check for validity of the SPF entry is performed if the domain with trust set only appears in the header. Therefore, no DMARC validation can take place.

Consequently, if there is a difference between the MAIL FROM and Header-From domains, the email must have either

- at the partner entry a familiar subnet matches the submitting IP address or
- an S/MIME, PGP or DKIM signature belonging to the domain with the trust level set.



**NOTE:** In order for the above scenario to work, the Reputation filter must be enabled with checks for DMARC, SPF, DKIM and the sending IP address enabled in each rule where Level of Trust is active.

## I Authentication as a prerequisite for all bonuses

To prevent attacks with fake email addresses, we recommend that you make some form of authentication a precondition not only for the domain bonus, but for all bonuses. See Level of trust configuration.

## I Related steps

### Related steps

**How to activate Level of Trust**| The Level of Trust system must be activated per rule. See Steps in creating rules.

**How to configure Level of Trust**| The settings for Level of Trust are made under Level of Trust Configuration. See Level of trust configuration.

## See also

[Level of trust configuration](#)

[Spam Confidence Level \(SCL\)](#)

[How NoSpamProxy Protection classifies emails as spam](#)

## Rules

#	Enabled	Managed	Name	Sender scope	Recipient scope	IP filtering	Decision	Filters	Actions
1	✗		Outbound mails without signature and/or encryption	Corporate domain	External address	Disabled	Pass		
2	✓		All outbound mails	Corporate domain	Any address	Disabled	Check Reject if SCL reaches 4		
3	✓		All other inbound mails	External address	Corporate domain	Disabled	Check Reject if SCL reaches 4		

[Add](#) [Modify](#) [Remove](#) [Duplicate rule](#) [Reorder rules](#) [Generate default rules](#)

## What are rules?

NoSpamProxy applies rules that you can configure individually when processing emails. These rules are modular in structure. You can create your own rules and modify existing rules by selecting the desired filters from the available filters for each individual rule. Within each rule you can weight and configure them as you wish using a multiplier.

You can also specify that rules apply only to specific IP addresses or recipients, for example, only to senders with a specific TLD (Top Level Domain) or IP addresses from a specific subnet.



**TIP:** After reinstalling NoSpamProxy, you can create default rules. These enable the gateway to start functioning as quickly as possible with minimal administration effort. Nevertheless, you should check these rules and adapt them to your needs if necessary.

### The order of the rules is crucial

If a rule is responsible for an email to be checked, it will be used. If more than one rule applies to an email, the rule that is highest in the list is applied.

### How rules, filters and actions are related

To process emails, NoSpamProxy applies rules that you can configure individually. For each email, the individual filters of the applicable rule are executed. Filters evaluate how strongly the email meets a certain filter criterion and award corresponding penalty and bonus points. The awarded points are weighted with the multiplier of the filters and then added to a total value. If this value exceeds the set **Spam Confidence Level (SCL)** of the rule, the email will be rejected. You can set the allowed SCL individually for each rule. See **Step 4: Configuring filters** and **Filters in NoSpamProxy**. **Actions in NoSpamProxy** are called up after the filters have determined whether the email is rejected or allowed to pass. Actions can, among other things, modify the emails, for example to add a footer or remove unwanted attachments. However, actions can also reject emails that would actually happen after they have been evaluated by the filters. This means that a

virus scanner, for example, can still reject the email even though it has not been detected as spam. Actions are therefore higher-level settings with which filters can be overridden if necessary. To find out which actions are available and how they work exactly, see [\*\*Actions available in NoSpamProxy\*\*](#).

## Creating rules

For information on creating rules, see [\*\*Creating rules\*\*](#).

# I Spam Confidence Level (SCL)

NoSpamProxy Protection rejects all emails whose Spam Confidence Level (SCL) exceeds a certain threshold. The administrator defines this threshold value in the individual [\*\*Rules\*\*](#).

## Example 1

This example is based on the following filter configuration:

- Emails should be checked and rejected as soon as the SCL is greater than or equal to 4.
- Three filters are activated: Realtime Blocklists, Spam URI Realtime Blocklists and the word matches.
- The Word Matches filter is configured to search for the words Sex, Viagra, Cialis, etc. and to give two penalty points per hit.
- The two block list filters should give two points per hit.
- [\*\*Level of Trust\*\*](#) is switched off.

Now an email containing eight forbidden words and one forbidden link is processed. The link is included in a blacklist. Furthermore, the submitting IP address is represented on two blacklists.

### Preliminary filter result

Filter	Spam Confidence Level
Realtime Blocklists	4 (Two hits times two penalty points per hit)
Spam URI Realtime Blocklists	2 (One hit times two penalty points per hit)
Word matches	16 (Eight hits times two penalty points per hit)

Basically, all filters - including the Level of Trust - always truncate the determined value to 10 if it is greater than 10. For negative values that are smaller than -10, the value is adjusted to -10.

### "Net value" of the filters

Filter	Spam Confidence Level
Realtime Blocklists	4
Spam URI Realtime Blocklists	2
Word matches	10 (limited because the first value was >10)

Finally, the multiplier of the individual filters is taken into account. The filter Realtime Blocklists and Spam URI Realtime Blocklists have a multiplier of "2", the word matches have a multiplier of "1". The net value of the filters is now multiplied by the respective multiplier.

### "Net value" and multiplier

Filter	Spam Confidence Level	Multiplier	SCL
Realtime Blocklists	4	2	8
Spam URI Realtime Blocklists	2	2	4
Word matches	10 (limited because the first value was >10)	1	10
Total			22

The email therefore receives an SCL of 22 and is thus rejected.

### Example 2

In this example, the filter configuration from the first example is extended by the Level of Trust. It is the same email as in the previous example. However, we assume that this is a wanted email and that there is already an address pair and a domain bonus in the database from the sender and recipient address.

- Since the last email contact was already four days ago, the address pair bonus with 65 bonus points is not as high anymore. The domain, on the other hand, is trusted with a static 100 bonus points.
- The bonus points of the Level of Trust in the database are not directly the SCL value, but the so-called trust points. These are only used within the filters.

### Evaluation by Level of Trust

Existing negative values as well as positive values are included in the calculation of the Level of Trust. Negative values can be caused, for example, by the intelligent DSN check or manually set values. In principle, negative values then take precedence over positive values. So if an email had received **+100** trust points for the domain, but had been assigned **-5** trust points for other reasons, these **-5** trust points would be used as the basis of the weighting.

To calculate the SCL, the resulting value is then divided by the value **-10** and results in an SCL of **-10** points in this example. As with all other filters, the determined value is clipped to **10** or **-10**. The table with the net values of all filters now looks as follows:

Filter	Spam Confidence Level
Realtime Blocklists	4
Spam URI Realtime Blocklists	2
Word matches	10 (limited because the first value was >10)
Level of Trust	-10

You can define the multiplier of the individual filters in the respective rule. The Level of Trust, on the other hand, determines its multiplier independently. For this purpose, the multipliers of all other filters are added and result in this example in the value **5**.

### Result from Spam Confidence Level and Level of Trust

Filter	Spam Confidence Level	Multiplier	SCL
Realtime Blocklists	4	2	8

Filter	Spam Confidence Level	Multiplier	SCL
Spam URI Realtime Blocklists	2	2	4
Word matches	10 (limited because the first value was >10)	1	10
Level of Trust	-10	5 (=2+2+1)	-50
Total			-28

The email would have been delivered in this example because the SCL is less than 4. To clarify the example, the Core Antispam Engine filter is also configured with the multiplier "3". This filter always assigns 4 points for a hit and this value is also not configurable.

The Core Antispam Engine filter also rates the email poorly.

#### Final result of the SCL calculation

Filter	Spam Confidence Level	Multiplier	SCL
Realtime Blocklists	4	2	8
Spam URI Realtime Blocklists	2	2	4
Word matches	10 (limited because the first value was >10)	1	10
Core Antispam Engine Filter	4	3	12
Level of Trust	-10	8 (=2+2+1+3)	-80
Total			-46

The multiplier of Level of Trust has automatically adjusted itself through the additional filter and can therefore have a greater impact on the result. This ensures that intended communication always reaches the recipient - regardless of the content of the email.

## URL Safeguard

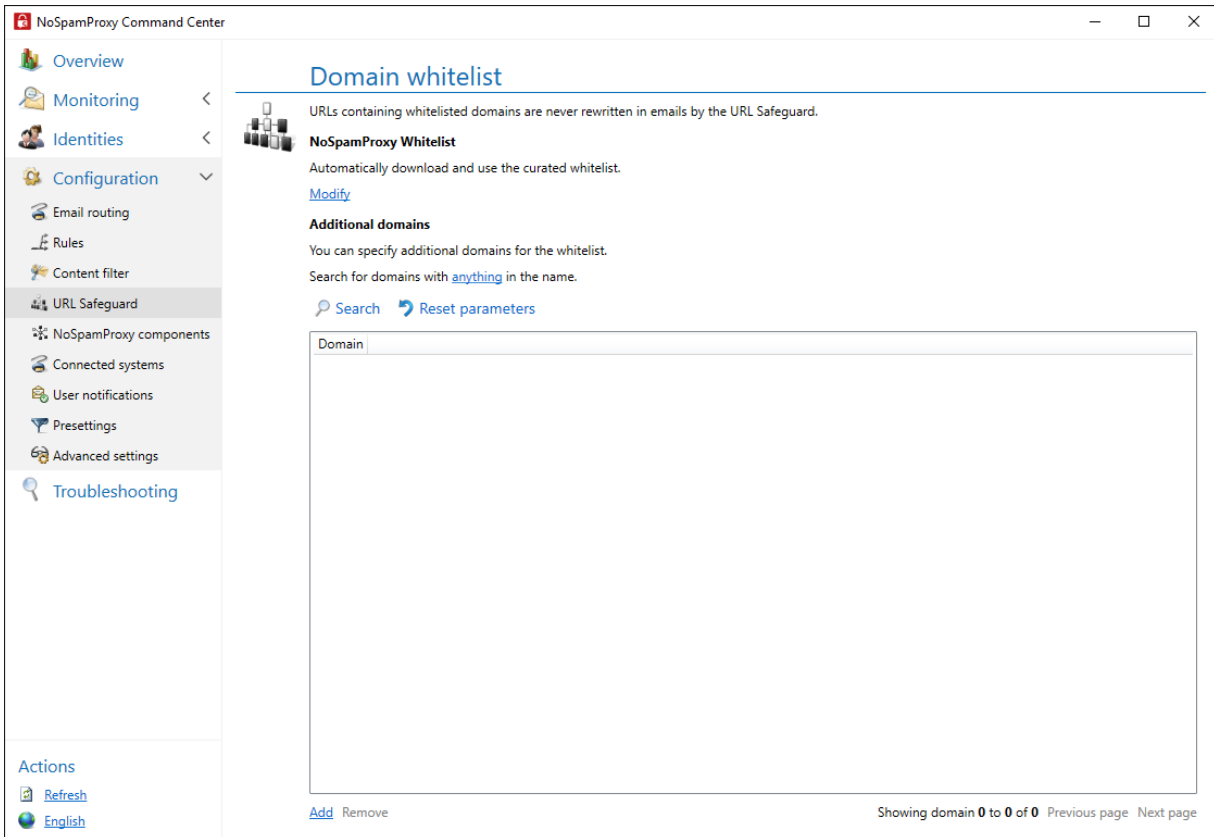
If configured accordingly, the URL Safeguard cross-checks the links in inbound emails against entries in the following lists:

- NoSpamProxy Allowlist, a list of known websites curated by NoSpamProxy.
- The local allowlist created by the administrator.

Domains that exist in one of these lists as well as your corporate domains will never be rewritten by the URL Safeguard.



**NOTE:** You can make settings for the NoSpamProxy Allowlist and the local allowlist under **Configuration > URL Safeguard** .



## How does the URL Safeguard work?

If the domain contained in the link is not present in any of the lists, NoSpamProxy replaces the original link with a link that points to the Web Portal.

- NoSpamProxy replaces the original link with a link that points to the Web Portal.
- NoSpamProxy replaces the original link with a link that points to the Web Portal and blocks access to the original link.

In both cases, the e-mail delivered to the recipient contains only the rewritten link.

- If the link is classified as safe, access to the original URL is permitted and executed.

- If the link is classified as unsafe, access is denied. A notification about the incident will be added to the message tracking. Depending on the configuration, the administrator also receives a notification.



**TIP:** Blocked URLs can be unblocked by adding them to the local allowlist. The domain belonging to the blocked URL can be viewed on the Web Portal by the recipient of the e-mail after clicking on the rewritten link. The responsible administrator can then carry out the activation. A further delivery of the email by the communication partner is not necessary.

## Frequently asked questions

### What is a Protected Link?

The expression **Protected Link** is displayed instead of a URL if the display text contains a URL that can be copied into the browser and leads to a potentially harmful page.

### Can the Protected Link tag be changed?

Yes. See [Anpassen des Tags Protected Link im URL Safeguard.](#)

### In which cases are URLs rewritten?

The URL or the display text in the email is rewritten if the domain of the URL of the display text or the actual link is not on the NoSpamProxy Allowlist or the local allowlist.

## What can I do if links to the Web Portal cannot be opened due to their length?

A long link to the Web Portal may mean that it cannot be opened, as it exceeds the length limit of some browsers due to the rewriting. The original URL **cannot** be tracked in the associated message track, even if tracking has been activated. Only a shortened version is displayed there. You can view the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) in the associated Message Track, on the **URL Safeguard** tab, provided that tracking has been activated (see [Default partner settings](#)). To prevent links from this domain from being rewritten in the future, add the corresponding domain to the local allowlist. See [Setting up URL Safeguard](#).

### See

[Setting up URL Safeguard](#)

[Anpassen des Tags Protected Link im URL Safeguard](#)

[URL Safeguard \(Action\)](#)

[Melden von False Negatives und False Positives](#)

## Points allocation for domains for Level of Trust

The bonus points for Level of Trust are assigned to the respective domains in two different ways:

- Automatically based on an outbound email.
- Manually via the user interface under [Partners](#) or via the PowerShell cmdlet `Set-NspPartnerTrustDetails`.

For an inbound email from this domain to receive the stored bonus points, at least one of the following conditions must be met in relation to the domain that has a certain trust level:

- The SPF check is successful.
- The DKIM check is successful.
- The DMARC check is successful.
- The email is signed using S/MIME or PGP and the signature is valid (and matches the domain in the email header).
- The IP address is mentioned in the properties of the domain. This list is automatically filled with the IP addresses that NoSpamProxy can read from the MX and A records of the respective domain. However, the addresses are only collected if there is no DMARC record for the sender domain.

No check for validity of the SPF entry is performed if the domain with trust set only appears in the header. Therefore, no DMARC validation can take place.

Consequently, if there is a difference between the MAIL FROM and Header-From domains, the email must have either

- at the partner entry a familiar subnet matches the submitting IP address or
- an S/MIME, PGP or DKIM signature belonging to the domain with the trust level set.



**NOTE:** In order for the above scenario to work, the Reputation filter must be enabled with checks for DMARC, SPF, DKIM and the sending IP address enabled in each rule where Level of Trust is active.

# Help and support

---

## Knowledge Base

---

The **Knowledge Base** contains further technical information on various problems.

## Website

---

The **NoSpamProxy website** contains manuals, white papers, brochures and other information about NoSpamProxy.

## NoSpamProxy Forum

---

The **NoSpamProxy forum** gives you the opportunity to exchange information with other NoSpamProxy users, get tips and tricks and share them with others.

## Blog

---

The **blog** offers technical support, tips on new product versions, suggestions for changes to your configuration, warnings about compatibility problems and much more. The latest news from the blog is also displayed on the start page of the NoSpamProxy Command Center.

## YouTube

---

On our **YouTube** channel you will find tutorials, how-tos and other product information that will make working with NoSpamProxy easier.

## NoSpamProxy Support

---

You can reach our support team

- by phone at [+49 5251304-636](tel:+495251304636)
- by email at [support@nospamproxy.de](mailto:support@nospamproxy.de).

